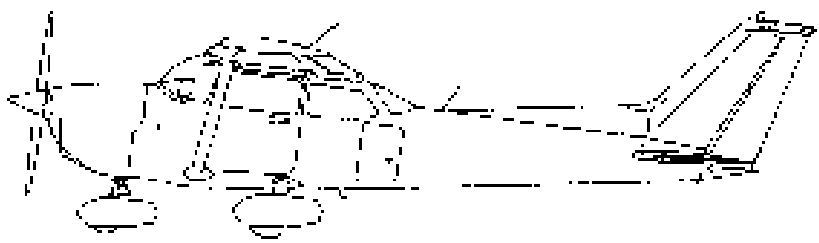
Cessna
A Textron Company

Pilot's Operating Handbook
and
FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual



THIS PUBLICATION MUST BE CARRIED IN THE AIRPLANE AT ALL TIMES

The Cessna Aircraft Company

Model 172S

Serial No. 172S8404

Registration No. N5323P

This publication includes the material required to be furnished to the pilot by FAR Part 23 and constitutes the FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual.

FAA APPROVAL

FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J
The Cessna Aircraft Co
Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1
Executive Engineer
Date: July 8, 1998

Member of GAMA

Original Issue - 8 July 1998

THIS MANUAL WAS PROVIDED FOR THE AIRPLANE IDENTIFIED ON THE TITLE PAGE ON 23 March 2000.

SUBSEQUENT REVISIONS SUPPLIED BY THE CESSNA AIRCRAFT COMPANY MUST BE PROPERLY INSERTED.

[illegible]

The Cessna Aircraft Company, Aircraft Division

REVISION

MODEL 172S

PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK
AND FAA APPROVED
AIRPLANE FLIGHT MANUAL

REVISION 5

19 JULY 2004

172SPHUSR05

INSERT THE FOLLOWING PAGES INTO THE PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK

Pilot's Operating Handbook

and

FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

Serial Numbers 172S8001 and On

Original Issue - 8 July 1998

Revision 5 - 19 July 2004

PART NUMBER: 172SPHUS05

CONGRATULATIONS . . . .

Congratulations on your purchase and welcome to Cessna ownership. Your Cessna has been designed and constructed to give you the most in performance, value and comfort.

This Pilot's Operating Handbook has been prepared as a guide to help you get the most utility from your airplane. It contains information about your airplane's equipment, operating procedures, performance and suggested service and care. Please study it carefully and use it as a reference.

The worldwide Cessna Organization and Cessna Customer Service are prepared to serve you. The following services are offered by each Cessna Service Station:

- THE CESSNA AIRPLANE WARRANTIES, which provide coverage for parts and labor, are available through Cessna Service Stations worldwide. Warranty provisions and other important information are contained in the Customer Care Program Handbook supplied with your airplane. The Customer Care Card assigned to you at delivery will establish your eligibility under warranty and should be presented to your local Cessna Service Station at the time of warranty service.

- FACTORY TRAINED PERSONNEL to provide you with courteous, expert service.

- FACTORY APPROVED SERVICE EQUIPMENT to provide you efficient and accurate workmanship.

- A STOCK OF GENUINE CESSNA SERVICE PARTS are available when you need them.

- THE LATEST AUTHORITATIVE INFORMATION FOR SERVICING CESSNA AIRPLANES. Cessna Service Stations have all of the current Maintenance Manuals, Illustrated Parts Catalogs and various other support publications produced by Cessna Aircraft Company.

A current Cessna Service Station Directory accompanies your new airplane. The Directory is revised annually, and a current copy can be obtained from your nearest Cessna Service Station.

We urge all Cessna owners/operators to utilize the benefits available within the Cessna Organization.

PERFORMANCE - SPECIFICATIONS

*SPEED:

Maximum at Sea Level		126 KNOTS
Cruise, 75% Power at 8500 FT		124 KNOTS

CRUISE: Recommended lean mixture with fuel allowance for engine start, taxi, takeoff, climb and 45 minutes reserve.

75% Power at 8500 FT	Range	518 NM
53 Gallons Usable Fuel	Time	4.26 HRS
Range at 10,000 FT, 45% power	Range	638 NM
53 Gallons Usable Fuel	Time	6.72 HRS

RATE OF CLIMB AT SEA LEVEL	730 FPM
SERVICE CEILING	14,000 FT
TAKEOFF PERFORMANCE:	
Ground Roll	960 FT
Total Distance Over 50 FT Obstacle	1630 FT
LANDING PERFORMANCE:	
Ground Roll	575 FT
Total Distance Over 50 FT Obstacle	1335 FT
STALL SPEED:	
Flaps Up, Power Off	53 KCAS
Flaps Down, Power Off	48 KCAS
MAXIMUM WEIGHT:	
Ramp	2558 LBS
Takeoff	2550 LBS
Landing	2550 LBS
STANDARD EMPTY WEIGHT	1663 LBS
MAXIMUM USEFUL LOAD	895 LBS
BAGGAGE ALLOWANCE	120 LBS

PERFORMANCE-SPECIFICATIONS

(Continued)

WING LOADING: Lbs/Sq Ft 14.7
POWER LOADING: Lbs/HP 14.2
FUEL CAPACITY . . . . 56 GAL
OIL CAPACITY . . . . 8 QTS
ENGINE: Textron Lycoming IO-360-L2A
180 BHP at 2700 RPM
PROPELLER: Fixed Pitch, Diameter . . . . 76 IN.

NOTE

Speed performance is shown for an airplane equipped with speed fairings which increase the speeds by approximately 2 knots. There is a corresponding difference in range, while all other performance figures are unchanged when speed fairings are installed.

The above performance figures are based on airplane weights at 2550 pounds, standard atmospheric conditions, level, hard-surfaced dry runways and no wind. They are calculated values derived from flight tests conducted by The Cessna Aircraft Company under carefully documented conditions and will vary with individual airplanes and numerous factors affecting flight performance.

COVERAGE

The Pilot's Operating Handbook in the airplane at the time of delivery from The Cessna Aircraft Company contains information applicable to the Model 172S airplane by serial number and registration number shown on the Title Page. This handbook is applicable to airplane serial number 172S8001 and On. All information is based on data available at the time of publication.

This handbook consists of nine sections that cover all operational aspects of a standard-equipped airplane. Following Section 8 are the Supplements, Section 9, which provide expanded operational procedures for the avionics equipment (both standard and optional), and provides information on special operations.

Supplements are individual documents, and may be issued or revised without regard to revision dates which apply to the POH itself. These supplements contain a Log of Effective Pages, which should be used to determine the status of each supplement.

ORIGINAL ISSUE AND REVISIONS

This Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual is comprised of the original issue and any subsequent revisions. To ensure that information in this manual is current, the revisions must be incorporated as they are issued. This manual was originally issued on July 8, 1998. As revisions are issued, they will be noted in the Log of Effective Pages table.

The part number of this manual has also been designed to further aid the owner/operator in determining the revision level of any POH. Refer to the example below for a breakdown:

172S PHUS 00

Revision Level (Revision 0, Original Issue)

Manual (Pilot's Operating Handbook, U.S.)

Airplane Model (172S)

LOG OF EFFECTIVE PAGES

The following Log of Effective Pages provides the date of issue for original and revised pages, as well as a listing of all pages in the POH. Pages which are affected by the current revision will be preceded by an asterisk with the revision level.

Revision Level	Date of Issue	Revision Level	Date of Issue
0 (Original Issue)	July 8, 1998	3	Mar 2, 2001
1	May 30, 2000	4	Aug 12, 2003
2	Dec 20, 2000	5	July 19, 2004

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
Title	July 8/98	1-21	May 30/00
Assignment Record	July 8/98	1-22	July 8/98
* ii	Revision 5	1-23	May 30/00
iii	May 30/00	1-24	July 8/98
iv	Revision 4	1-25	Revision 4
v	Revision 4	1-26	Revision 4
vi	May 30/00	1-27/1-28	Revision 4
vii	May 30/00	2-1/2-2	Revision 4
viii	July 8/98	2-3	May 30/00
* ix	Revision 5	2-4	July 8/98
* x	Revision 5	2-5	Revision 4
* xi	Revision 5	2-6	Revision 4
* xii	Revision 5	2-7	July 8/98
xiii/xiv	Revision 4	2-8	July 8/98
1-1	Revision 4	2-9	July 8/98
1-2	Revision 4	2-10	Revision 4
1-3	Revision 4	2-11	July 8/98
1-4	Revision 4	2-12	Revision 4
1-5	Revision 4	2-13	July 8/98
1-6	Revision 4	2-14	Revision 4
1-7	Revision 4	2-15/2-16	Revision 4
1-8	Revision 4	3-1	Revision 4
1-9	Revision 4	3-2	Revision 4
1-10	Revision 4	3-3	May 30/00
1-11	July 8/98	3-4	Revision 4
1-12	July 8/98	3-5	Revision 4
1-13	May 30/00	3-6	Revision 4
1-14	July 8/98	3-7	Revision 4
1-15	Revision 4	3-8	Revision 4
1-16	May 30/00	3-9	Revision 4
1-17	Revision 4	3-10	May 30/00
1-18	May 30/00		
1-19	Revision 4		
1-20	Revision 4		

LOG OF EFFECTIVE PAGES
(Continued)

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
3-11	Revision 4	4-33	Revision 4
3-12	Revision 4	4-34	Revision 4
3-13	July 8/98	4-35	Revision 4
3-14	Revision 4	4-36	Revision 4
3-15	Revision 4	5-1/5-2	Revision 4
3-16	Revision 4	5-3	July 8/98
3-17	Revision 4	5-4	July 8/98
3-18	Revision 4	5-5	Revision 4
3-19	Revision 4	5-6	Revision 4
3-20	Revision 4	5-7	July 8/98
3-21	Revision 4	5-8	July 8/98
3-22	Revision 4	5-9	July 8/98
3-23/3-24	Revision 4	5-10	July 8/98
4-1	Revision 4	5-11	July 8/98
4-2	Revision 4	5-12	July 8/98
4-3/4-4	Revision 4	5-13	Revision 4
4-5	May 30/00	5-14	July 8/98
4-6	May 30/00	5-15	July 8/98
4-7	Revision 4	5-16	July 8/98
4-8	Revision 4	5-17	July 8/98
4-9	Revision 4	5-18	July 8/98
4-10	Revision 4	5-19	July 8/98
4-11	Revision 4	5-20	July 8/98
4-12	Revision 4	5-21	July 8/98
4-13	Revision 4	5-22	July 8/98
4-14	Revision 4	5-23/5-24	Revision 4
4-15	Revision 4	6-1/6-2	Revision 4
4-16	Revision 4	6-3	Revision 4
4-17	Revision 4	6-4	July 8/98
4-18	May 30/00	6-5	July 8/98
4-19	Revision 4	6-6	Revision 4
4-20	Revision 4	6-7	July 8/98
4-21	Revision 4	6-8	July 8/98
4-22	Revision 4	6-9	July 8/98
4-23	Revision 4	6-10	May 30/00
4-24	Revision 4	6-11	July 8/98
4-25	Revision 4	6-12	May 30/00
4-26	Revision 4	6-13	July 8/98
4-27	Revision 4	6-14	July 8/98
4-28	Revision 4	6-15	July 8/98
4-29	Revision 4		
4-30	Revision 4		
4-31	Revision 4		
4-32	Revision 4		

LOG OF EFFECTIVE PAGES
(Continued)

LOG OF EFFECTIVE PAGES
(Continued)

PAGE	DATE
8-20	Revision 4
8-21	May 30/00
8-22	May 30/00
8-23	Revision 4
8-24	Revision 4
9-1/9-2	May 30/00

APPROVED BY

[illegible]

DATE OF APPROVAL [illegible]

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1
GENERAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

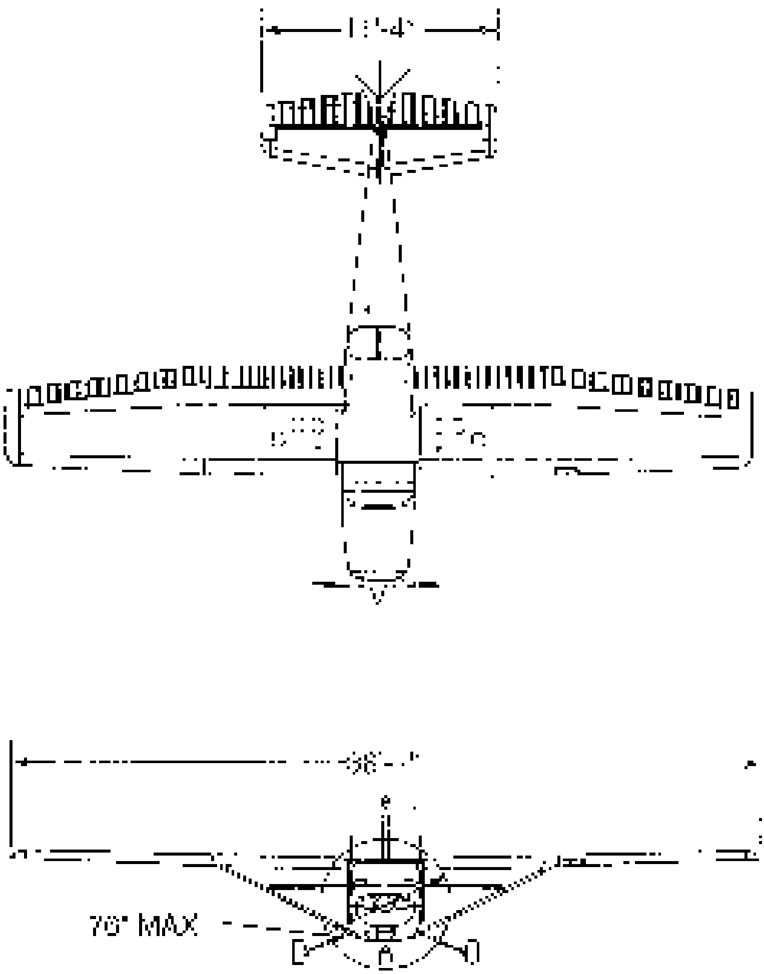
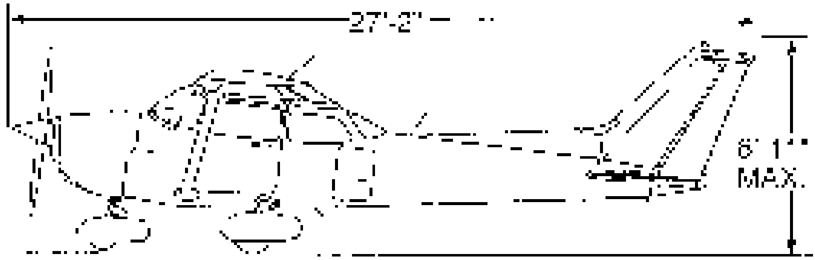


Figure 1-1. Three View - Normal Ground Attitude (Sheet 1 of 2)



NOTE 1: WING SPAN SHOWN WITH STROBE LIGHTS INSTALLED.

NOTE 2: WHEEL BASE LENGTH IS 65".

NOTE 3: PROPELLER GROUND CLEARANCE IS 11 1/4".

NOTE 4: WING AREA IS 174 SQUARE FEET.

NOTE 5: MINIMUM TURNING RADIUS (* PIVOT POINT TO OUTBOARD WING TIP) IS 27' 5 1/2".

NOTE 6: NORMAL GROUND ATTITUDE IS SHOWN WITH NOSE STRUT SHOWING APPROXIMATELY 2" OF STRUT, AND WINGS LEVEL.

Figure 1-1. Three View - Normal Ground Attitude (Sheet 2)

INTRODUCTION

This handbook contains 9 sections, and includes the material required to be furnished to the pilot by FAR Part 23. It also contains supplemental data supplied by Cessna Aircraft Company.

Section 1 provides basic data and information of general interest. It also contains definitions or explanations of symbols, abbreviations, and terminology commonly used.

DESCRIPTIVE DATA

ENGINE

Number of Engines: 1.
Engine Manufacturer: Textron Lycoming.
Engine Model Number: IO-360-L2A.
Engine Type: Normally aspirated, direct drive, air-cooled, horizontally opposed, fuel injected, four cylinder engine with 360 cu. in. displacement.
Horsepower Rating and Engine Speed: 180 rated BHP at 2700 RPM.

PROPELLER

Propeller Manufacturer: McCauley Propeller Systems.
Propeller Model Number: 1A170E/JHA7660.
Number of Blades: 2.
Propeller Diameter: 76 inches.
Propeller Type: Fixed pitch.

FUEL

WARNING

USE OF UNAPPROVED FUELS MAY RESULT IN DAMAGE TO THE ENGINE AND FUEL SYSTEM COMPONENTS, RESULTING IN POSSIBLE ENGINE FAILURE.

Approved Fuel Grades (and Colors):
100LL Grade Aviation Fuel (Blue).
100 Grade Aviation Fuel (Green).

NOTE

Isopropyl alcohol or diethylene glycol monomethyl ether (DiEGME) may be added to the fuel supply. Additive concentrations shall not exceed 1% for isopropyl alcohol or 0.10% to 0.15% for DiEGME. Refer to Section 8 for additional information.

Fuel Capacity:

Total Capacity: 56.0 U.S. gallons.
Total Usable: 53.0 U.S. gallons.

Total Capacity Each Tank: 28.0 U.S. gallons.
Total Usable Each Tank: 26.5 U.S. gallons.

NOTE

To ensure maximum fuel capacity and minimize cross-feeding when refueling, always park the airplane in a wings-level, normal ground attitude and place the fuel selector in the Left or Right position. Refer to Figure 1-1 for normal ground attitude dimensions.

OIL

Oil Specification:

MIL-L-6082 or SAE J1966 Aviation Grade Straight Mineral Oil: Used when the airplane was delivered from the factory and should be used to replenish the supply during the first 25 hours. This oil should be drained and the filter changed after the first 25 hours of operation. Refill the engine with MIL-L-6082 or SAE J1966 Aviation Grade Straight Mineral Oil and continue to use until a total of 50 hours has accumulated or oil consumption has stabilized.

MIL-L-22851 or SAE J1899 Aviation Grade Ashless Dispersant Oil: Oil conforming to the latest revision and/or supplements to Textron Lycoming Service Instruction No. 1014, **must be used** after first 50 hours or once oil consumption has stabilized.

Recommended Viscosity for Temperature Range:

Temperature	MIL-L-6082 or SAE J1966 Straight Mineral Oil SAE Grade	MIL-L-22851 or SAE J1899 Ashless Dispersant SAE Grade
Above 27°C (80°F)	60	15W-50, 20W-50 or 60
Above 16°C (60°F)	50	40 or 50
-1°C (30°F) to 32°C (90°F)	40	40
-18°C (0°F) to 21°C (70°F)	30	30, 40 or 20W-40
Below -12°C (10°F)	20	30 or 20W-30
-18°C (0°F) to 32°C (90°F)	20W-50	20W-50 or 15W-50
All Temperatures		15W-50 or 20W-50

NOTE

When operating temperatures overlap, use the lighter grade of oil.

Oil Capacity:
- Sump: 8 U.S. Quarts
- Total: 9 U.S. Quarts

MAXIMUM CERTIFICATED WEIGHTS

Ramp Weight	Normal Category:	2558 lbs.
	Utility Category:	2208 lbs.
Takeoff Weight	Normal Category:	2550 lbs.
	Utility Category:	2200 lbs.
Landing Weight	Normal Category:	2550 lbs.
	Utility Category:	2200 lbs.

Weight in Baggage Compartment, Normal Category:

Baggage Area 1 (Station 82 to 108): 120 lbs. See note below.
Baggage Area 2 (Station 108 to 142): 50 lbs. See note below.

NOTE

The maximum combined weight capacity for Baggage Area 1 and Baggage Area 2 is 120 lbs.

Weight in Baggage Compartment, Utility Category:

In this category, the rear seat must not be occupied and the baggage compartment must be empty.

STANDARD AIRPLANE WEIGHTS

Standard Empty Weight:	1663 lbs.
Maximum Useful Load, Normal Category:	895 lbs.
Maximum Useful Load, Utility Category:	545 lbs.

CABIN AND ENTRY DIMENSIONS

Detailed dimensions of the cabin interior and entry door openings are illustrated in Section 6.

BAGGAGE SPACE AND ENTRY DIMENSIONS

Dimensions of the baggage area and baggage door opening are illustrated in detail in Section 6.

SPECIFIC LOADINGS

Wing Loading: 14.7 lbs./sq. ft.
Power Loading: 14.2 lbs./hp.

SYMBOLS, ABBREVIATIONS AND TERMINOLOGY

GENERAL AIRSPEED TERMINOLOGY AND SYMBOLS

KCAS	**Knots Calibrated Airspeed** is indicated airspeed corrected for position and instrument error and expressed in knots. Knots calibrated airspeed is equal to KTAS in standard atmosphere at sea level.
KIAS	**Knots Indicated Airspeed** is the speed shown on the airspeed indicator and expressed in knots.
KTAS	**Knots True Airspeed** is the airspeed expressed in knots relative to undisturbed air which is KCAS corrected for altitude and temperature.
V_A	**Maneuvering Speed** is the maximum speed at which full or abrupt control movements may be used without overstressing the airframe.
V_{FE}	**Maximum Flap Extended Speed** is the highest speed permissible with wing flaps in a prescribed extended position.
V_{NO}	**Maximum Structural Cruising Speed** is the speed that should not be exceeded except in smooth air, then only with caution.
V_{NE}	**Never Exceed Speed** is the speed limit that may not be exceeded at any time.
V_S	**Stalling Speed or the minimum steady flight speed** is the minimum speed at which the airplane is controllable.
V_{S0}	**Stalling Speed or the minimum steady flight speed** is the minimum speed at which the airplane is controllable in the landing configuration at the most forward center of gravity.
V_X	**Best Angle-of-Climb Speed** is the speed which results in the greatest gain of altitude in a given horizontal distance.
V_Y	**Best Rate-of-Climb Speed** is the speed which results in the greatest gain in altitude in a given time.

METEOROLOGICAL TERMINOLOGY

OAT	**Outside Air Temperature** is the free air static temperature. It may be expressed in either degrees Celsius or degrees Fahrenheit.
Standard Temperature	**Standard Temperature** is 15°C at sea level pressure altitude and decreases by 2°C for each 1000 feet of altitude.
Pressure Altitude	**Pressure Altitude** is the altitude read from an altimeter when the altimeter's barometric scale has been set to 29.92 inches of mercury (1013 mb).

ENGINE POWER TERMINOLOGY

BHP	**Brake Horsepower** is the power developed by the engine.
RPM	**Revolutions Per Minute** is engine speed.
Static RPM	**Static RPM** is engine speed attained during a full throttle engine runup when the airplane is on the ground and stationary.
MAP	**Manifold Absolute Pressure** is the absolute pressure measured in the engine induction system. MAP is measured in units of inches of mercury (inHG).
Lean Mixture	Decreased proportion of fuel in the fuel-air mixture supplied to the engine. As air density decreases, the amount of fuel required by the engine decreases for a given throttle setting. Adjusting the fuel-air mixture to provide a smaller portion of fuel is known as "leaning" the mixture.
Rich Mixture	Increased proportion of fuel in the fuel-air mixture supplied to the engine. As air density increases, the amount of fuel required by the engine increases for a given throttle setting. Adjusting the fuel-air mixture to provide a greater portion of fuel is known as "richening" the mixture.
Full Rich	Mixture control full forward (pushed in, full control travel, toward the panel).
Idle Cutoff	Mixture control full aft (pulled out, full control travel, away from the panel).

ENGINE POWER TERMINOLOGY (Continued)

Full Throttle	Throttle full forward (pushed in, full control travel, toward the panel). Also known as "full open" throttle.
Closed Throttle	Throttle full aft (pulled out, full control travel, away from the panel). Also known as the throttle "idle" position.

AIRPLANE PERFORMANCE AND FLIGHT PLANNING TERMINOLOGY

Demonstrated Crosswind Velocity	**Demonstrated Crosswind Velocity** is the velocity of the crosswind component for which adequate control of the airplane during takeoff and landing was actually demonstrated during certification tests. The value shown is not considered to be limiting.
Usable Fuel	**Usable Fuel** is the fuel available for flight planning.
Unusable Fuel	**Unusable Fuel** is the quantity of fuel that can not be safely used in flight.
GPH	**Gallons Per Hour** is the amount of fuel consumed per hour.
NMPG	**Nautical Miles Per Gallon** is the distance which can be expected per gallon of fuel consumed at a specific engine power setting and/or flight configuration.
g	g is acceleration due to gravity.
Course Datum	**Course Datum** is the compass reference used by the autopilot, along with course deviation, to provide lateral control when tracking a navigation signal.

WEIGHT AND BALANCE TERMINOLOGY

Reference Datum	**Reference Datum** is an imaginary vertical plane from which all horizontal distances are measured for balance purposes.
Station	**Station** is a location along the airplane fuselage given in terms of the distance from the reference datum.
Arm	**Arm** is the horizontal distance from the reference datum to the center of gravity (C.G.) of an item.
Moment	**Moment** is the product of the weight of an item multiplied by its arm. (Moment divided by the constant 1000 is used in this handbook to simplify balance calculations by reducing the number of digits.)
Center of Gravity (C.G.)	**Center of Gravity** is the point at which an airplane, or equipment, would balance if suspended. Its distance from the reference datum is found by dividing the total moment by the total weight of the airplane.
C.G. Arm	**Center of Gravity Arm** is the arm obtained by adding the airplane's individual moments and dividing the sum by the total weight.
C.G. Limits	**Center of Gravity Limits** are the extreme center of gravity locations within which the airplane must be operated at a given weight.
Standard Empty Weight	**Standard Empty Weight** is the weight of a standard airplane, including unusable fuel, full operating fluids and full engine oil.
Basic Empty Weight	**Basic Empty Weight** is the standard empty weight plus the weight of optional equipment.
Useful Load	**Useful Load** is the difference between ramp weight and the basic empty weight.
MAC	**MAC (Mean Aerodynamic Chord)** is the chord of an imaginary rectangular airfoil having the same pitching moments throughout the flight range as that of the actual wing.

(2558 normal
2208 utility)

Maximum Ramp Weight	**Maximum Ramp Weight** is the maximum weight approved for ground maneuver, and includes the weight of fuel used for start, taxi and runup.
Maximum Takeoff Weight	**Maximum Takeoff Weight** is the maximum weight approved for the start of the takeoff roll. (2550 2240)
Maximum Landing Weight	**Maximum Landing Weight** is the maximum weight approved for the landing touchdown. (2550 2200)
Tare	**Tare** is the weight of chocks, blocks, stands, etc. used when weighing an airplane, and is included in the scale readings. Tare is deducted from the scale reading to obtain the actual (net) airplane weight.

METRIC / IMPERIAL / U.S. CONVERSION CHARTS

The following charts have been provided to help international operators convert U.S. measurement supplied with the Pilot's Operating Handbook into metric and Imperial measurements.

The standard followed for measurement units shown, is the National Institute of Standards Technology (NIST), Publication 811, "Guide for the Use of the International System of Units (SI)."

Please refer to the following pages for these charts.

(Kilograms × 2.205 = Pounds) (Pounds × .454 = Kilograms)

KILOGRAMS INTO POUNDS
KILOGRAMMES EN LIVRES

kg	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	lb.	lb.	lb.	lb.	lb.	lb.	lb.	lb.	lb.	lb.
0		2.205	4.409	6.614	8.818	11.023	13.228	15.432	17.637	19.842
10	22.046	24.251	26.455	28.660	30.865	33.069	35.274	37.479	39.683	41.888
20	44.092	46.297	48.502	50.706	52.911	55.116	57.320	59.525	61.729	63.934
30	66.139	68.343	70.548	72.753	74.957	77.162	79.366	81.571	83.776	85.980
40	88.185	90.390	92.594	94.799	97.003	99.208	101.41	103.62	105.82	108.03
50	110.23	112.44	114.64	116.85	119.05	121.25	123.46	125.66	127.87	130.07
60	132.28	134.48	136.69	138.89	141.10	143.30	145.51	147.71	149.91	152.12
70	154.32	156.53	158.73	160.94	163.14	165.35	167.55	169.76	171.96	174.17
80	176.37	178.57	180.78	182.98	185.19	187.39	189.60	191.80	194.01	196.21
90	198.42	200.62	202.83	205.03	207.24	209.44	211.64	213.85	216.05	218.26
100	220.46	222.67	224.87	227.08	229.28	231.49	233.69	235.90	238.10	240.30

POUNDS INTO KILOGRAMS
LIVRES EN KILOGRAMMES

lb.	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	kg	kg	kg	kg	kg	kg	kg	kg	kg	kg
0		0.454	0.907	1.361	1.814	2.268	2.722	3.175	3.629	4.082
10	4.536	4.990	5.443	5.897	6.350	6.804	7.257	7.711	8.165	8.618
20	9.072	9.525	9.979	10.433	10.886	11.340	11.793	12.247	12.701	13.154
30	13.608	14.061	14.515	14.969	15.422	15.876	16.329	16.783	17.237	17.690
40	18.144	18.597	19.051	19.504	19.958	20.412	20.865	21.319	21.772	22.226
50	22.680	23.133	23.587	24.040	24.494	24.948	25.401	25.855	26.308	26.762
60	27.216	27.669	28.123	28.576	29.030	29.484	29.937	30.391	30.844	31.298
70	31.752	32.205	32.659	33.112	33.566	34.019	34.473	34.927	35.380	35.834
80	36.287	36.741	37.195	37.648	38.102	38.555	39.009	39.463	39.916	40.370
90	40.823	41.277	41.731	42.184	42.638	43.091	43.545	43.999	44.452	44.906
100	45.359	45.813	46.266	46.720	47.174	47.627	48.081	48.534	48.988	49.442

Figure 1-2. Weight Conversions (Sheet 1 of 2)

(Kilograms x 2.205 = Pounds)   (Pounds x .454 = Kilograms)

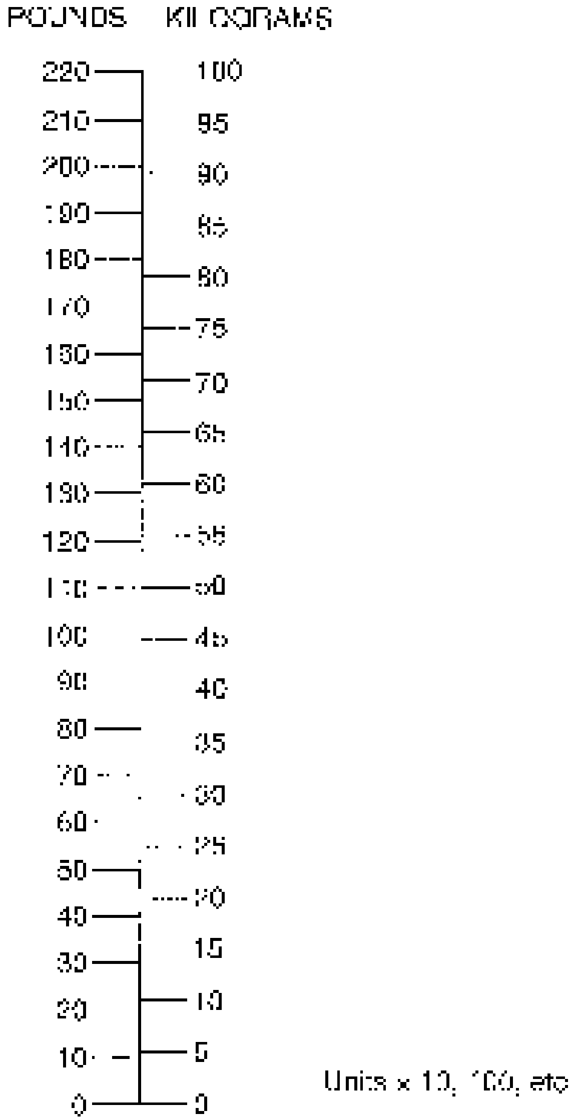


Figure 1-2. Weight Conversions (Sheet 2)

(Meters x 3.281 = Feet) (Feet x .305 = Meters)

METERS INTO FEET
METRES EN PIEDS

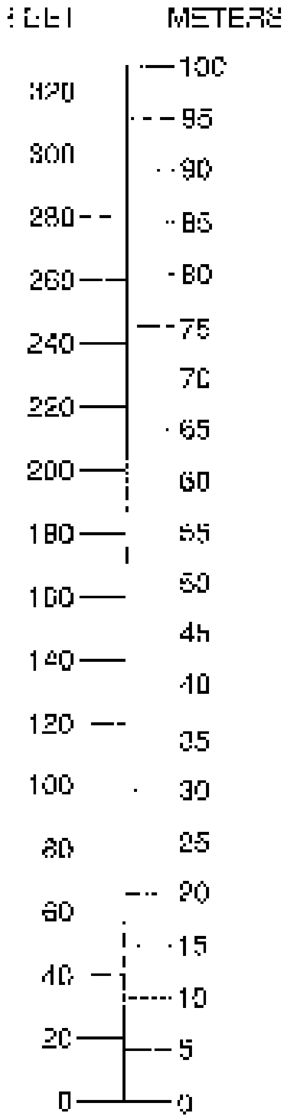
M	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	feet	feet	feet	feet	feet	feet	feet	feet	feet	feet
0	- - -	3.281	6.562	9.843	13.123	16.404	19.685	22.966	26.247	29.528
10	32.808	36.089	39.370	42.651	45.932	49.213	52.493	55.774	59.055	62.336
20	65.617	68.897	72.178	75.459	78.740	82.021	85.302	88.583	91.863	95.144
30	98.425	101.71	104.99	108.27	111.55	114.83	118.11	121.39	124.67	127.95
40	131.23	134.51	137.79	141.08	144.36	147.64	150.92	154.20	157.48	160.76
50	164.04	167.32	170.60	173.88	177.16	180.45	183.73	187.01	190.29	193.57
60	196.85	200.13	203.41	206.69	209.97	213.25	216.54	219.82	223.10	226.38
70	229.66	232.94	236.22	239.50	242.78	246.06	249.34	252.62	255.91	259.19
80	262.47	265.75	269.03	272.31	275.59	278.87	282.15	285.43	288.71	291.99
90	295.28	298.56	301.84	305.12	308.40	311.68	314.96	318.24	321.52	324.80
100	328.08	331.36	334.64	337.93	341.21	344.49	347.77	351.05	354.33	357.61

FEET INTO METERS
PIEDS EN METRES

FT	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m
0	- - -	0.305	0.610	0.914	1.219	1.524	1.829	2.134	2.438	2.743
10	3.048	3.353	3.658	3.962	4.267	4.572	4.877	5.182	5.486	5.791
20	6.096	6.401	6.706	7.010	7.315	7.620	7.925	8.230	8.534	8.839
30	9.144	9.449	9.754	10.058	10.363	10.668	10.973	11.278	11.582	11.887
40	12.192	12.497	12.802	13.106	13.411	13.716	14.021	14.326	14.630	14.935
50	15.240	15.545	15.850	16.154	16.459	16.764	17.069	17.374	17.678	17.983
60	18.288	18.593	18.898	19.202	19.507	19.812	20.117	20.422	20.726	21.031
70	21.336	21.641	21.946	22.250	22.555	22.860	23.165	23.470	23.774	24.079
80	24.384	24.689	24.994	25.298	25.603	25.908	26.213	26.518	26.822	27.127
90	27.432	27.737	28.042	28.346	28.651	28.956	29.261	29.566	29.870	30.175
100	30.480	30.785	31.090	31.394	31.699	32.004	32.309	32.614	32.918	33.223

Figure 1-3. Length Conversions (Sheet 1 of 2)

(Meters x 3.281 = Feet) (Feet x .305 = Meters)



Units x 10, 100, etc.

Figure 1-3. Length Conversions (Sheet 2)

(Centimeters x .394 = Inches)   (Inches x 2.54 = Centimeters)

CENTIMETERS INTO INCHES
CENTIMETRES EN POUCES

cm	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.
0	. . .	0.394	0.787	1.181	1.575	1.969	2.362	2.756	3.150	3.543
10	3.937	4.33	4.724	5.118	5.512	5.906	6.299	6.693	7.087	7.480
20	7.874	8.268	8.661	9.055	9.449	9.843	10.236	10.630	11.024	11.417
30	11.811	12.205	12.598	12.992	13.386	13.780	14.173	14.567	14.96	15.354
40	15.748	16.142	16.535	16.929	17.323	17.717	18.110	18.504	18.898	19.291
50	19.685	20.079	20.472	20.866	21.260	21.654	22.047	22.441	22.835	23.228
60	23.622	24.016	24.409	24.803	25.197	25.591	25.984	26.378	26.772	27.165
70	27.559	27.953	28.346	28.740	29.134	29.528	29.921	30.315	30.709	31.102
80	31.496	31.890	32.283	32.677	33.071	33.465	33.858	34.252	34.646	35.039
90	35.433	35.827	36.220	36.614	37.008	37.402	37.795	38.189	38.583	38.976
100	39.370	39.764	40.157	40.551	40.945	41.339	41.732	42.126	42.520	42.913

INCHES INTO CENTIMETERS
POUCES EN CENTIMETRES

in.	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	cm	cm	cm	cm	cm	cm	cm	cm	cm	cm
0		2.54	5.08	7.62	10.16	12.70	15.24	17.78	20.32	22.86
10	25.40	27.94	30.48	33.02	35.56	38.10	40.64	43.18	45.72	48.26
20	50.80	53.34	55.88	58.42	60.96	63.50	66.04	68.58	71.12	73.66
30	76.20	78.74	81.28	83.82	86.36	88.90	91.44	93.98	96.52	99.06
40	101.60	104.14	106.68	109.22	111.76	114.30	116.84	119.38	121.92	124.46
50	127.00	129.54	132.08	134.62	137.16	139.70	142.24	144.78	147.32	149.86
60	152.40	154.94	157.48	160.02	162.56	165.10	167.64	170.18	172.72	175.26
70	177.80	180.34	182.88	185.42	187.96	190.50	193.04	195.58	198.12	200.66
80	203.20	205.74	208.28	210.82	213.36	215.90	218.44	220.98	223.52	226.06
90	228.60	231.14	233.68	236.22	238.76	241.30	243.84	246.38	248.92	251.46
100	254.00	256.54	259.08	261.62	264.16	266.70	269.24	271.78	274.32	276.86

Figure 1-4. Length Conversions (Sheet 1 of 2)

(Centimeters x .394 = Inches)   (Inches x 2.54 = Centimeters)

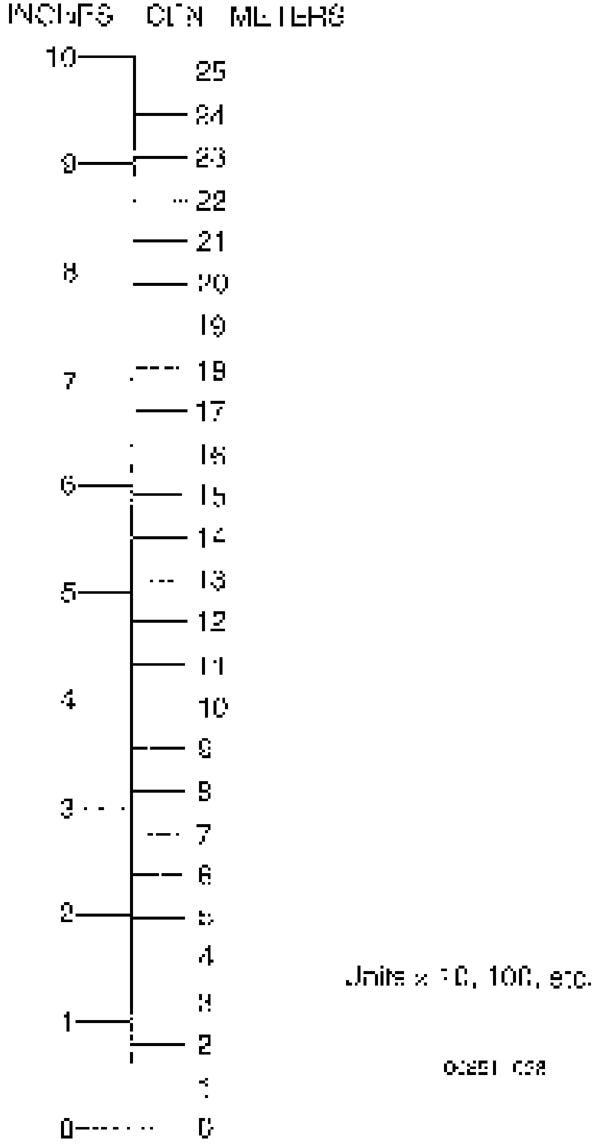


Figure 1-4. Length Conversions (Sheet 2)

(Statute Miles x 1.609 = Kilometers) (Kilometers x .622 = Statute Miles)
(Statute Miles x .869 = Nautical Miles) (Nautical Miles x 1.15 = Statute Miles)
(Nautical Miles x 1.852 = Kilometers) (Kilometers x .54 = Nautical Miles)

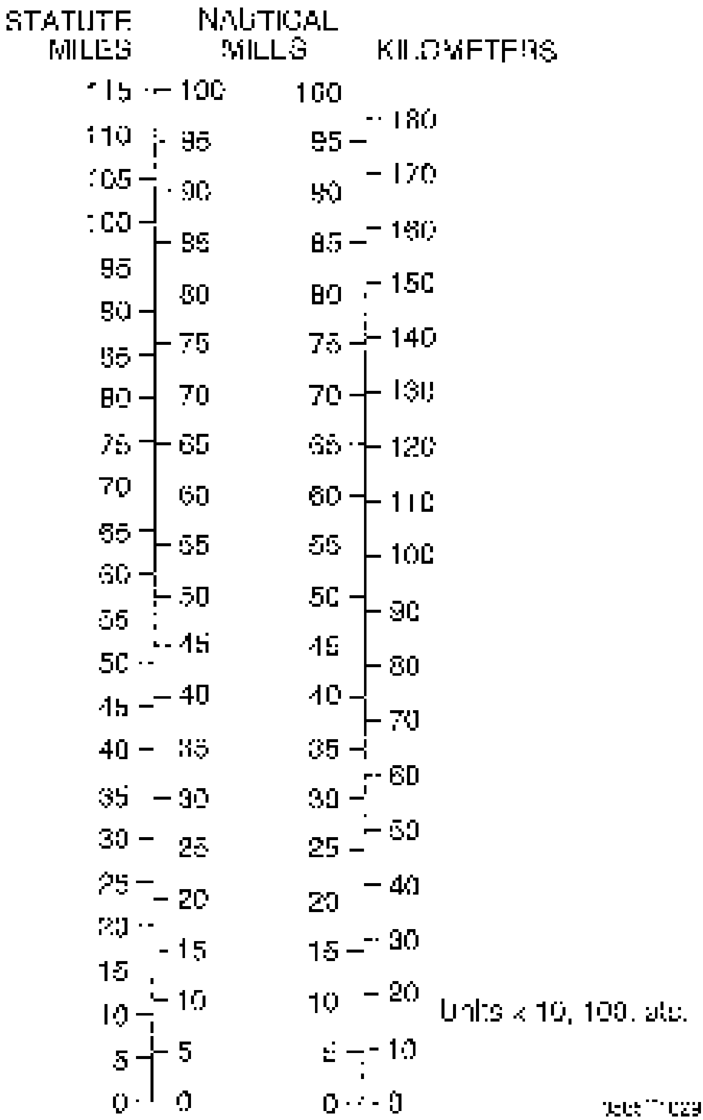


Figure 1-5. Distance Conversions

(Imperial Gallons × 4.546 = Liters)
(Liters × .22 = Imperial Gallons)

LITERS INTO IMPERIAL GALLONS
LITRES EN GALLONS IMPERIAL

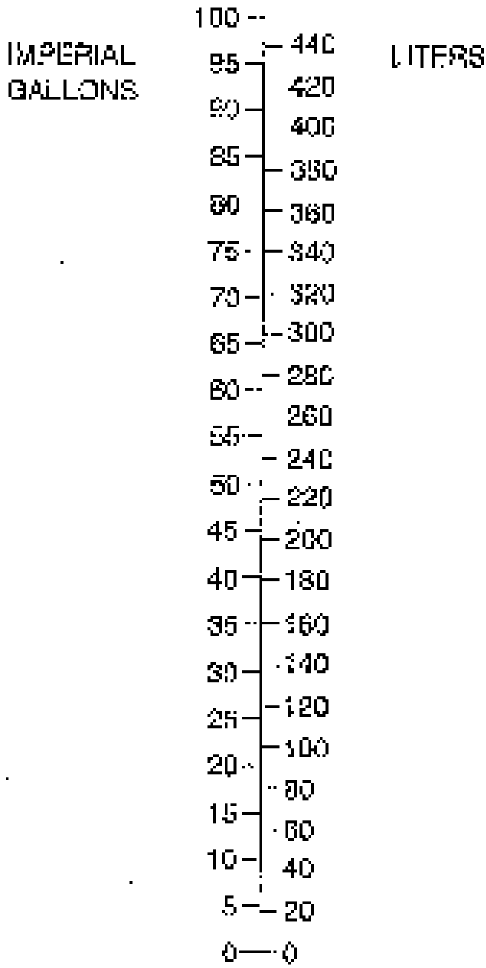
Lt	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	IG	IG	IG	IG	IG	IG	IG	IG	IG	IG
0	---	0.220	0.440	0.660	0.880	1.100	1.320	1.540	1.760	1.980
10	2.200	2.420	2.640	2.860	3.080	3.300	3.520	3.740	3.960	4.180
20	4.400	4.620	4.840	5.059	5.279	5.499	5.719	5.939	6.159	6.379
30	6.599	6.819	7.039	7.259	7.479	7.699	7.919	8.139	8.359	8.579
40	8.799	9.019	9.239	9.459	9.679	9.899	10.119	10.339	10.559	10.779
50	10.999	11.219	11.439	11.659	11.879	12.099	12.319	12.539	12.759	12.979
60	13.198	13.418	13.638	13.858	14.078	14.298	14.518	14.738	14.958	15.178
70	15.398	15.618	15.838	16.058	16.278	16.498	16.718	16.938	17.158	17.378
80	17.598	17.818	18.038	18.258	18.478	18.698	18.918	19.138	19.358	19.578
90	19.798	20.018	20.238	20.458	20.678	20.898	21.118	21.338	21.558	21.778
100	21.998	22.218	22.438	22.658	22.878	23.098	23.318	23.537	23.757	23.977

IMPERIAL GALLONS INTO LITERS
GALLONS IMPERIAL EN LITRES

IG	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	Lt	Lt	Lt	Lt	Lt	Lt	Lt	Lt	Lt	Lt
0	---	4.546	9.092	13.638	18.184	22.730	27.276	31.822	36.368	40.914
10	45.460	50.006	54.552	59.097	63.643	68.189	72.735	77.281	81.827	86.373
20	90.919	95.465	100.01	104.56	109.10	113.65	118.20	122.74	127.29	131.83
30	136.38	140.93	145.47	150.02	154.56	159.11	163.66	168.20	172.75	177.29
40	181.84	186.38	190.93	195.48	200.02	204.57	209.11	213.66	218.21	222.75
50	227.30	231.84	236.39	240.94	245.48	250.03	254.57	259.12	263.67	268.21
60	272.76	277.30	281.85	286.40	290.94	295.49	300.03	304.58	309.13	313.67
70	318.22	322.76	327.31	331.86	336.40	340.95	345.49	350.04	354.59	359.13
80	363.68	368.22	372.77	377.32	381.86	386.41	390.95	395.50	400.04	404.59
90	409.14	413.68	418.23	422.77	427.32	431.87	436.41	440.96	445.50	450.05
100	454.60	459.14	463.69	468.24	472.78	477.33	481.87	486.42	490.96	495.51

Figure 1-6. Volume Conversions (Sheet 1 of 3)

(Imperial Gallons × 4.4546 = Litres)
(Litres × .22 = Imperial Gallons)



Units × 10, 100, etc.

0585T1033

Figure 1-6. Volume Conversions (Sheet 2 of 3)

(Imperial Gallons × 1.2 = U.S. Gallons)
(U.S. Gallons × .833 = Imperial Gallons)
(U.S. Gallons × 3.785 = Liters)
(Liters × .264 = U.S. Gallons)

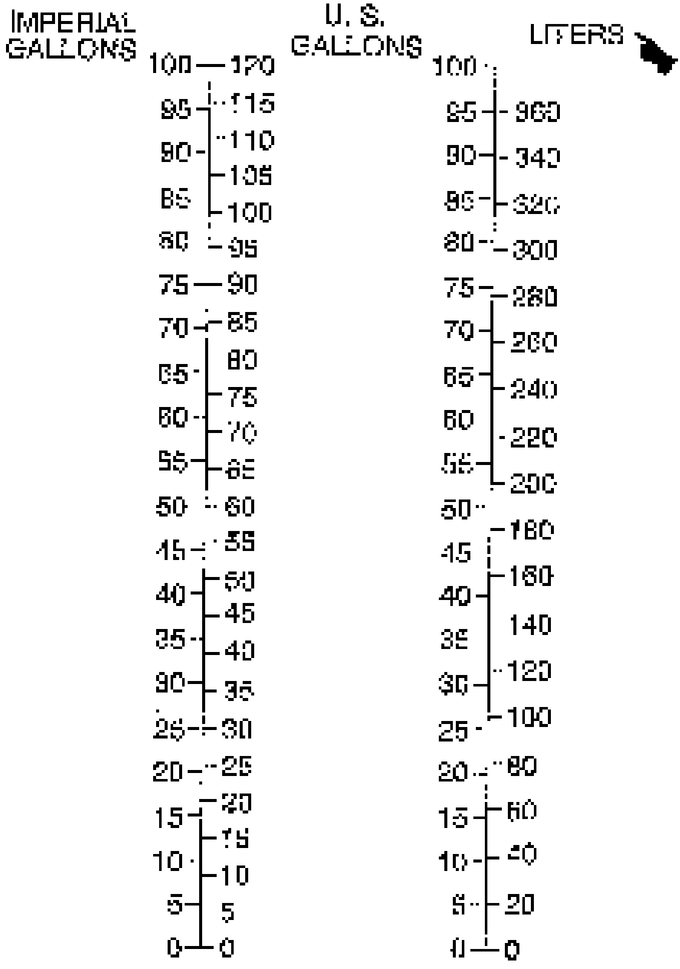
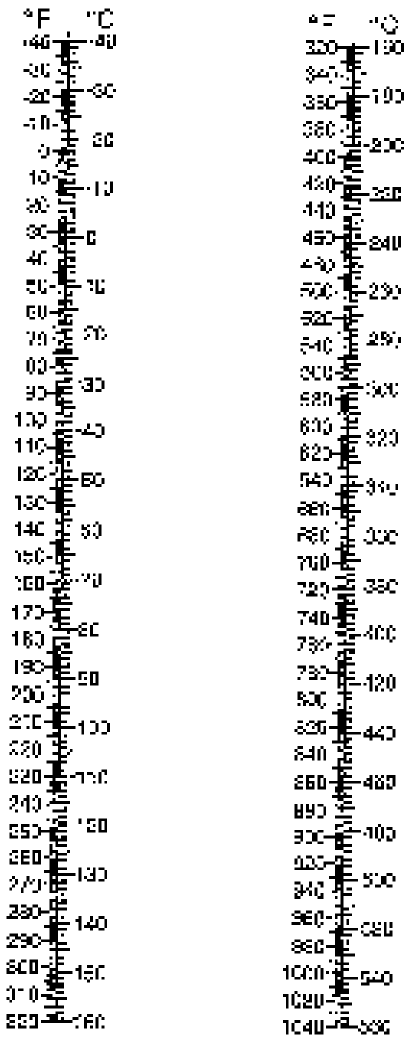


Figure 1-6. Volume Conversions (Sheet 3 of 3)

TEMPERATURE CONVERSIONS

$(°F - 32) \times 5/9 = °C$ $\qquad$ $°C \times 9/5 + 32 = °F$



0585T1004

Figure 1-7. Temperature Conversions

PRESSURE CONVERSION
HECTOPASCALS (MILLIBARS) TO INCHES MERCURY (in HG)

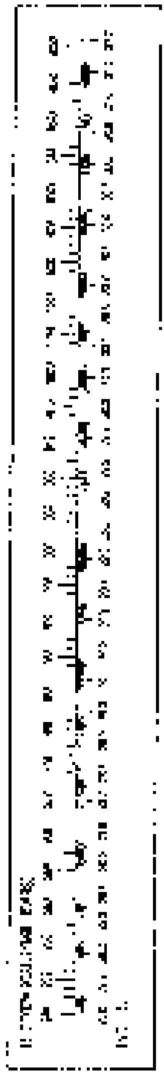


Figure 1-8. Hectopascals to Inches Mercury

AVGAS Specific Gravity = .72

(Liters X .72 = Kilograms) – (Kilograms X 1.389 = Liters)

(Liters X 1.58 = Pounds) – (Pounds X .633 = Liters)

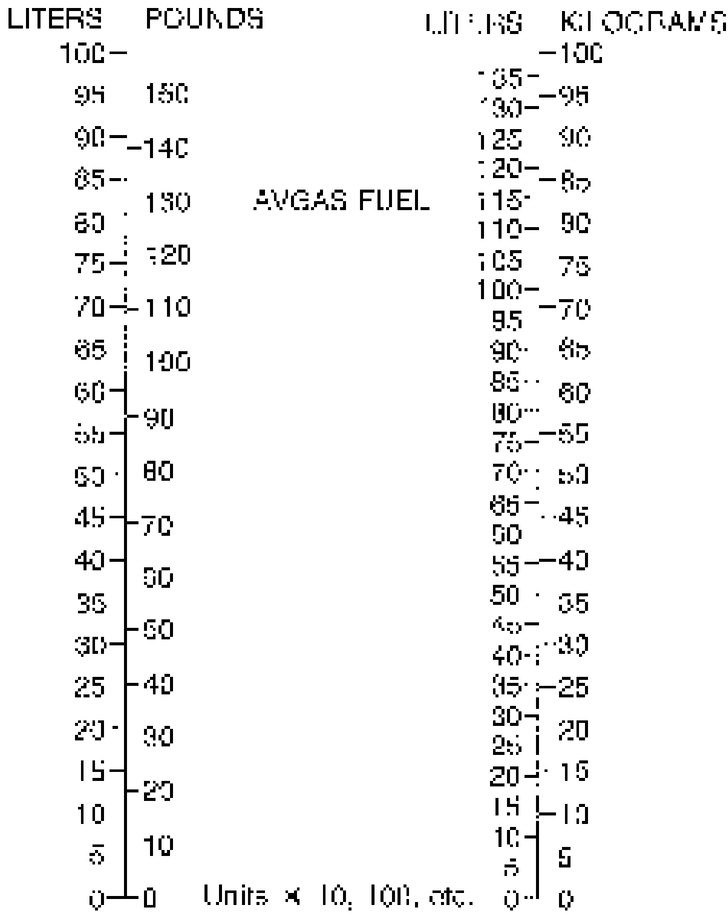


Figure 1-8. Volume to Weight Conversion

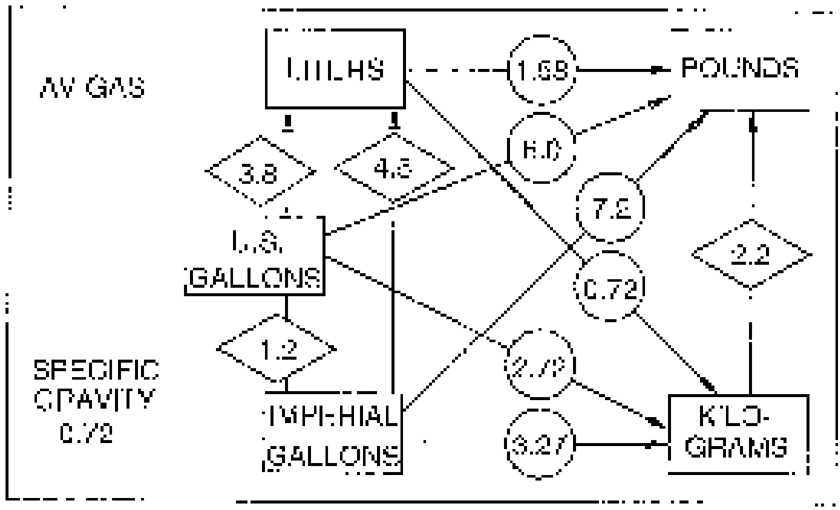


Figure 1-10. Quick Conversions

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

Section 2 includes operating limitations, instrument markings, and basic placards necessary for the safe operation of the airplane, its engine, standard systems and standard equipment. The limitations included in this section and in Section 9 have been approved by the Federal Aviation Administration. Observance of these operating limitations is required by Federal Aviation Regulations.

NOTE

Refer to the Supplements, Section 9, of this Pilot's Operating Handbook for amended operating limitations, operating procedures, performance data and other necessary information for airplanes equipped with specific options.

NOTE

The airspeeds listed in the Airspeed Limitations chart (Figure 2-1) and the Airspeed Indicator Markings chart (Figure 2-2) are based on Airspeed Calibration data shown in Section 5 with the normal static source. If the alternate static source is being used, ample margins should be observed to allow for the airspeed calibration variations between the normal and alternate static sources as shown in Section 5.

The Cessna Model 172S is certificated under FAA Type Certificate No. 3A12.

AIRSPEED LIMITATIONS

Airspeed limitations and their operational significance are shown in Figure 2-1. Maneuvering speeds shown apply to normal category operations. The utility category maneuvering speed is 98 KIAS at 2200 pounds.

SYMBOL	SPEED	KCAS	KIAS	REMARKS
V_{NE}	Never Exceed Speed	160	163	Do not exceed this speed in any operation.
V_{NO}	Maximum Structural Cruising Speed	126	129	Do not exceed this speed except in smooth air, and then only with caution.
V_A	Maneuvering Speed: 2550 Pounds 2200 Pounds 1900 Pounds	 102 95 88	 105 98 90	Do not make full or abrupt control movements above this speed.
V_{FE}	Maximum Flap Extended Speed: 10° Flaps 10° to 30° Flaps	 107 85	 110 85	Do not exceed this speed with flaps down.
—	Maximum Window Open Speed	160	163	Do not exceed this speed with windows open.

Figure 2-1. Airspeed Limitations

AIRSPEED INDICATOR MARKINGS

Airspeed indicator markings and their color code significance are shown in Figure 2-2.

MARKING	KIAS VALUE OR RANGE	SIGNIFICANCE
White Arc	40 - 85	Full Flap Operating Range. Lower limit is maximum weight V_{S0} in landing configuration. Upper limit is maximum speed permissible with flaps extended.
Green Arc	48 - 129	Normal Operating Range. Lower limit is maximum weight V_{S1} at most forward C.G. with flaps retracted. Upper limit is maximum structural cruising speed.
Yellow Arc	129-163	Operations must be conducted with caution and only in smooth air.
Red Line	163	Maximum speed for all operations.

POWERPLANT LIMITATIONS

Engine Manufacturer: Textron Lycoming.
Engine Model Number: IO-360-L2A.
Maximum Power: 180 BHP rating.
Engine Operating Limits for Takeoff and Continuous Operations:
Maximum Engine Speed: 2700 RPM.

NOTE

The static RPM range at full throttle is 2300 - 2400 RPM.

Maximum Oil Temperature	245°F (118°C).
Oil Pressure, Minimum:	20 PSI.
Maximum:	115 PSI.

Fuel Grade: See Fuel Limitations.
Oil Grade (Specification):

MIL-L-6082 or SAE J1966 Aviation Grade Straight Mineral Oil or MIL-L-22851 or SAE J1899 Ashless Dispersant Oil. Oil must comply with the latest revision and/or supplement for Textron Lycoming Service Instruction No. 1014.

Propeller Manufacturer: McCauley Propeller Systems.
Propeller Model Number: 1A170E/JHA7660.
Propeller Diameter: Maximum 76 inches.
: Minimum: 75 inch minimum.

POWERPLANT INSTRUMENT MARKINGS

Powerplant instrument markings and their color code significance are shown in Figure 2-3.

INSTRUMENT	RED LINE (MINIMUM)	GREEN ARC (NORMAL OPERATING)	RED LINE (MAX)
Tachometer: Sea Level		2100 to 2500 RPM	2700
5000 Feet		2100 to 2600 RPM	
10,000 Feet		2100 to 2700 RPM	
Oil Temperature		100 to 245°F	245°F
Oil Pressure	20 PSI	50 to 90 PSI	115 PSI
Fuel Quantity	0 (1.5 Gal. Unusable Each Tank)		
Fuel Flow	---	0 to 12 GPH	---
Vacuum Gage	----	4.5 - 5.5 in. Hg	----

Figure 2-3. Powerplant Instrument Markings

WEIGHT LIMITS

NORMAL CATEGORY

Maximum Ramp Weight: 2558 lbs.
Maximum Takeoff Weight: 2550 lbs.
Maximum Landing Weight: 2550 lbs.
Maximum Weight in Baggage Compartment:
Baggage Area 1 - Station 82 to 108: 120 lbs.
Baggage Area 2 - Station 108 to 142: 50 lbs.

NOTE

The maximum combined weight capacity for baggage areas 1 and 2 is 120 lbs.

UTILITY CATEGORY

Maximum Ramp Weight: 2208 lbs.
Maximum Takeoff Weight: 2200 lbs.
Maximum Landing Weight: 2200 lbs.
Maximum Weight in Baggage Compartment: In the utility category, the baggage compartment must be empty and rear seat must not be occupied.

CENTER OF GRAVITY LIMITS

NORMAL CATEGORY

Center of Gravity Range:

Forward: 35.0 inches aft of datum at 1950 lbs. or less, with straight line variation to 41.0 inches aft of datum at 2550 lbs.

Aft: 47.3 inches aft of datum at all weights.

Reference Datum: Lower portion of front face of firewall.

UTILITY CATEGORY

Center of Gravity Range:

Forward: 35.0 inches aft of datum at 1950 lbs. or less, with straight line variation to 37.5 inches aft of datum at 2200 lbs.

Aft: 40.5 inches aft of datum at all weights.

Reference Datum: Lower portion of front face of firewall.

MANEUVER LIMITS

NORMAL CATEGORY

This airplane is certificated in both the normal and utility category. The normal category is applicable to aircraft intended for non aerobatic operations. These include any maneuvers incidental to normal flying, stalls (except whip stalls), lazy eights, chandelles, and turns in which the angle of bank is not more than 60°.

NORMAL CATEGORY MANEUVERS AND RECOMMENDED ENTRY SPEED*

Chandelles	105 Knots
Lazy Eights	105 Knots
Steep Turns	95 Knots
Stalls (Except Whip Stalls)	Slow Deceleration

*** Abrupt use of the controls is prohibited above 105 KIAS.**

UTILITY CATEGORY

This airplane is not designed for purely aerobatic flight. However, in the acquisition of various certificates such as commercial pilot and flight instructor, certain maneuvers are required by the FAA. All of these maneuvers are permitted in this airplane when operated in the utility category.

In the utility category, the rear seat must not be occupied and the baggage compartment must be empty.

UTILITY CATEGORY MANEUVERS AND RECOMMENDED ENTRY SPEED*

Chandelles	105 Knots
Lazy Eights	105 Knots
Steep Turns	95 Knots
Spins	Slow Deceleration
Stalls (Except Whip Stalls)	Slow Deceleration

*** Abrupt use of the controls is prohibited above 98 knots.**

Aerobatics that may impose high loads should not be attempted. The important thing to bear in mind in flight maneuvers is that the airplane is clean in aerodynamic design and will build up speed quickly with the nose down. Proper speed control is an essential requirement for execution of any maneuver, and care should always be exercised to avoid excessive speed which in turn can impose excessive loads. In the execution of all maneuvers, avoid abrupt use of controls.

FLIGHT LOAD FACTOR LIMITS

NORMAL CATEGORY

Flight Load Factors (Maximum Takeoff Weight - 2550 lbs.):
*Flaps Up . . . . +3.8g, -1.52g
*Flaps Down . . . . +3.0g

*The design load factors are 150% of the above, and in all cases the structure meets or exceeds design loads.

UTILITY CATEGORY

Flight Load Factors (Maximum Takeoff Weight - 2200 lbs.):
*Flaps Up . . . . +4.4g, -1.76g
*Flaps Down . . . . +3.0g

*The design load factors are 150% of the above, and in all cases, the structure meets or exceeds design loads.

KINDS OF OPERATION LIMITS

The airplane as delivered is equipped for day VFR and may be equipped for night VFR and/or IFR operations. FAR Part 91 establishes the minimum required instrumentation and equipment for these operations. The reference to types of flight operations on the operating limitations placard reflects equipment installed at the time of Airworthiness Certificate issuance.

Flight into known icing conditions is prohibited.

FUEL LIMITATIONS

Total Fuel: 56 U.S. gallons (2 tanks at 28.0 gallons each).

Usable Fuel (all flight conditions): 53.0 U.S. gallons.

Unusable Fuel: 3.0 U.S. gallons (1.5 gallons each tank).

NOTE

To ensure maximum fuel capacity and minimize cross-feeding when refueling, always park the airplane in a wings level, normal ground attitude and place the fuel selector in the Left or Right position. Refer to Figure 1-1 for normal ground attitude definition.

ADDITIONAL FUEL LIMITATIONS

Takeoff and land with the fuel selector valve handle in the BOTH position.

Maximum slip or skid duration with one tank dry: 30 seconds.

Operation on either LEFT or RIGHT tank limited to level flight only.

With 1/4 tank or less, prolonged uncoordinated flight is prohibited when operating on either left or right tank.

Fuel remaining in the tank after the fuel quantity indicator reads 0 (red line) cannot be safely used in flight.

Approved Fuel Grades (and Colors):

100LL Grade Aviation Fuel (Blue).
100 Grade Aviation Fuel (Green).

OTHER LIMITATIONS

FLAP LIMITATIONS

Approved Takeoff Range: . . . . 0° to 10°
Approved Landing Range: . . . . 0° to 30°

PLACARDS

The following information must be displayed in the form of composite or individual placards.

1. In full view of the pilot: (The "DAY NIGHT - VFR - IFR" entry, shown on the example below, will vary as the airplane is equipped).

The markings and placards installed in this airplane contain operating limitations which must be complied with when operating this airplane in the Normal Category. Other operating limitations which must be complied with when operating this airplane in this category or in the Utility Category are contained in the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual.

Normal Category	No acrobatic maneuvers, including spins, approved.
Utility Category	No acrobatic maneuvers approved, except those listed in the Pilot's Operating Handbook. Baggage compartment and rear seat must not be occupied.
Spin Recovery	Opposite rudder - forward elevator - neutralize controls.

Flight into known icing conditions prohibited.

This airplane is certified for the following flight operations as of date of original airworthiness certificate:

DAY NIGHT VFR IFR

2. On the fuel selector valve:

TAKEOFF LANDING	BOTH 53.0 GAL.	ALL FLIGHT ATTITUDES

FUEL
SELECTOR

LEFT 26.5 GAL. LEVEL FLIGHT ONLY	RIGHT 26.5 GAL. LEVEL FLIGHT ONLY

3. Near fuel tank filler cap:

FUEL
100LL/100 MIN. GRADE AVIATION GASOLINE
CAP. 26.5 U.S. GAL. USABLE
CAP. 17.5 U.S. GAL. USABLE TO BOTTOM
OF FILLER INDICATOR TAB

4. On flap control indicator:

0° to 10°	110 KIAS	(Partial flap range with blue color code; also, mechanical detent at 10°.)
10° to 30°	85 KIAS	(White color code; also, mechanical detent at 20°.)

5. In baggage compartment:

120 POUNDS MAXIMUM BAGGAGE FORWARD OF BAGGAGE DOOR LATCH 50 POUNDS MAXIMUM BAGGAGE AFT OF BAGGAGE DOOR LATCH MAXIMUM 120 POUNDS COMBINED FOR ADDITIONAL LOADING INSTRUCTIONS SEE WEIGHT AND BALANCE DATA

6. A calibration card must be provided to indicate the accuracy of the magnetic compass in 30° increments.

7. On the oil filler cap:

OIL 8 QTS

8. On control lock:

CAUTION CONTROL LOCK REMOVE BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

9. Near airspeed indicator:

MANEUVERING SPEED - 105 KIAS

10. On the Upper Right Side of the Aft Cabin Partition

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER INSTALLED AFT OF THIS PARTITION MUST BE SERVICED IN ACCORDANCE WITH FAR PART 91.207

11. On forward face of firewall adjacent to the battery:

CAUTION 24 VOLTS D.C. THIS AIRCRAFT IS EQUIPPED WITH ALTERNATOR AND A NEGATIVE GROUND SYSTEM. OBSERVE PROPER POLARITY. REVERSE POLARITY WILL DAMAGE ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS.

12. On the upper right instrument panel:

SMOKING PROHIBITED

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

INTRODUCTION

Section 3 provides checklist and amplified procedures for coping with emergencies that may occur. Emergencies caused by airplane or engine malfunctions are extremely rare if proper preflight inspections and maintenance are practiced. Enroute weather emergencies can be minimized or eliminated by careful flight planning and good judgment when unexpected weather is encountered. However, should an emergency arise, the basic guidelines described in this section should be considered and applied as necessary to correct the problem. Emergency procedures associated with standard avionics, the ELT, or any optional systems can be found in the Supplements, Section 9.

AIRSPEEDS

AIRSPEEDS FOR EMERGENCY OPERATION

Engine Failure After Takeoff:
- Wing Flaps Up . . . . 70 KIAS
- Wing Flaps Down . . . . 65 KIAS

Maneuvering Speed:
- 2550 Lbs . . . . 105 KIAS
- 2200 Lbs . . . . 98 KIAS
- 1900 Lbs . . . . 90 KIAS

Maximum Glide . . . . 68 KIAS
Precautionary Landing With Engine Power . . . . 65 KIAS
Landing Without Engine Power:
- Wing Flaps Up . . . . 70 KIAS
- Wing Flaps Down . . . . 65 KIAS

EMERGENCY PROCEDURES CHECKLIST

Procedures in the Emergency Procedures Checklist portion of this section shown in **bold faced** type are immediate action items which should be committed to memory.

ENGINE FAILURES

ENGINE FAILURE DURING TAKEOFF ROLL

1. **Throttle -- IDLE.**
2. **Brakes -- APPLY.**
3. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT.
4. Mixture -- IDLE CUT OFF.
5. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
6. Master Switch -- OFF.

ENGINE FAILURE IMMEDIATELY AFTER TAKEOFF

1. **Airspeed -- 70 KIAS (flaps UP).**
   65 KIAS (flaps DOWN).
2. Mixture -- IDLE CUT OFF.
3. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- OFF (Pull Full Out).
4. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
5. Wing Flaps -- AS REQUIRED.
6. Master Switch -- OFF.
7. Cabin Door -- UNLATCH.
8. Land -- STRAIGHT AHEAD.

ENGINE FAILURE DURING FLIGHT (Restart Procedures)

1. **Airspeed -- 68 KIAS.**
2. **Fuel Shutoff Valve -- ON (push full in).**
3. **Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.**
4. **Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch -- ON.**
5. **Mixture -- RICH (if restart has not occurred).**
6. Ignition Switch -- BOTH (or START if propeller is stopped).

NOTE

If the propeller is windmilling, the engine will restart automatically within a few seconds. If the propeller has stopped (possible at low speeds), turn the ignition switch to START, advance the throttle slowly from idle and lean the mixture from full rich as required for smooth operation.

7. Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch -- OFF.

NOTE

If the fuel flow indicator immediately drops to zero (indicating an engine-driven fuel pump failure), return the Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch to the ON position.

FORCED LANDINGS

EMERGENCY LANDING WITHOUT ENGINE POWER

1. Passenger Seat Backs -- MOST UPRIGHT POSITION.
2. Seats and Seat Belts -- SECURE.
3. Airspeed -- 70 KIAS (flaps UP).
   65 KIAS (flaps DOWN).
4. Mixture -- IDLE CUT OFF.
5. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- OFF (Pull Full Out).
6. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
7. Wing Flaps -- AS REQUIRED (30° recommended).
8. Master Switch -- OFF (when landing is assured).
9. Doors -- UNLATCH PRIOR TO TOUCHDOWN.
10. Touchdown -- SLIGHTLY TAIL LOW.
11. Brakes -- APPLY HEAVILY.

PRECAUTIONARY LANDING WITH ENGINE POWER

1. Passenger Seat Backs -- MOST UPRIGHT POSITION.
2. Seats and Seat Belts -- SECURE.
3. Airspeed -- 65 KIAS.
4. Wing Flaps -- 20°.
5. Selected Field -- FLY OVER, noting terrain and obstructions, then retract flaps upon reaching a safe altitude and airspeed.
6. Avionics Master Switch and Electrical Switches -- OFF.
7. Wing Flaps -- 30° (on final approach).
8. Airspeed -- 65 KIAS.
9. Master Switch -- OFF.
10. Doors -- UNLATCH PRIOR TO TOUCHDOWN.
11. Touchdown -- SLIGHTLY TAIL LOW.
12. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
13. Brakes -- APPLY HEAVILY.

DITCHING

1. Radio -- TRANSMIT MAYDAY on 121.5 MHz, giving location and intentions and SQUAWK 7700.
2. Heavy Objects (in baggage area) -- SECURE OR JETTISON (if possible).
3. Passenger Seat Backs -- MOST UPRIGHT POSITION.
4. Seats and Seat Belts -- SECURE.
5. Wing Flaps -- 20° to 30°.
6. Power -- ESTABLISH 300 FT/MIN DESCENT AT 55 KIAS.

NOTE

If no power is available, approach at 70 KIAS with flaps up or at 65 KIAS with 10° flaps.

7. Approach -- High Winds, Heavy Seas -- INTO THE WIND.
   Light Winds, Heavy Swells -- PARALLEL TO SWELLS.
8. Cabin Doors -- UNLATCH.
9. Touchdown -- LEVEL ATTITUDE AT ESTABLISHED RATE OF DESCENT.
10. Face -- CUSHION at touchdown with folded coat.
11. ELT -- Activate.
12. Airplane -- EVACUATE through cabin doors. If necessary, open window and flood cabin to equalize pressure so doors can be opened.
13. Life Vests and Raft -- INFLATE WHEN CLEAR OF AIRPLANE.

FIRES

DURING START ON GROUND

1. **Ignition Switch -- START. Continue Cranking** to get a start which would suck the flames and accumulated fuel into the engine.

If engine starts:

2. Power -- 1800 RPM for a few minutes.
3. Engine -- SHUTDOWN and inspect for damage.

If engine fails to start:

4. Throttle -- **FULL** OPEN.
5. **Mixture -- IDLE CUT OFF.**
6. **Cranking -- CONTINUE.**
7. **Fuel Shutoff Valve --** OFF (Pull Full Out).
8. **Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch -- OFF.**
9. Fire Extinguisher -- ACTIVATE.
10. Engine -- SECURE.
    a. Master Switch -- OFF.
    b. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
11. Parking Brake -- RELEASE.
12. Airplane -- EVACUATE.
13. Fire -- EXTINGUISH using fire extinguisher, wool blanket, or dirt.
14. Fire Damage -- INSPECT, repair damage or replace damaged components or wiring before conducting another flight.

ENGINE FIRE IN FLIGHT

1. **Mixture -- IDLE CUT OFF.**
2. **Fuel Shutoff Valve -- Pull Out (OFF).**
3. **Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch -- OFF.**
4. **Master Switch -- OFF.**
5. Cabin Heat and Air -- OFF (except overhead vents).
6. Airspeed -- 100 KIAS (If fire is not extinguished, increase glide speed to find an airspeed, within airspeed limitations, which will provide an incombustible mixture).
7. Forced Landing -- EXECUTE (as described in Emergency Landing Without Engine Power).

ELECTRICAL FIRE IN FLIGHT

1. **Master Switch -- OFF.**
2. **Vents, Cabin Air, Heat -- CLOSED.**
3. **Fire Extinguisher -- ACTIVATE.**
4. Avionics Master Switch -- OFF.
5. All Other Switches (except ignition switch) -- OFF.

WARNING

AFTER DISCHARGING FIRE EXTINGUISHER AND ASCERTAINING THAT FIRE HAS BEEN EXTINGUISHED, VENTILATE THE CABIN.

6. Vents/Cabin Air/Heat -- OPEN when it is ascertained that fire is completely extinguished.

If fire has been extinguished and electrical power is necessary for continuance of flight to nearest suitable airport or landing area:

7. Master Switch -- ON.
8. Circuit Breakers -- CHECK for faulty circuit, do not reset.
9. Radio Switches -- OFF.
10. Avionics Master Switch -- ON.
11. Radio/Electrical Switches -- ON one at a time, with delay after each until short circuit is localized.

CABIN FIRE

1. **Master Switch -- OFF.**
2. **Vents/Cabin Air/Heat -- CLOSED** (to avoid drafts).
3. **Fire Extinguisher -- ACTIVATE.**

WARNING

AFTER DISCHARGING FIRE EXTINGUISHER AND ASCERTAINING THAT FIRE HAS BEEN EXTINGUISHED, VENTILATE THE CABIN.

4. Vents/Cabin Air/Heat -- Open when it is ascertained that fire is completely extinguished.
5. Land the airplane as soon as possible to inspect for damage.

WING FIRE

1. **Landing/Taxi Light Switches** -- OFF.
2. **Navigation Light Switch** -- OFF.
3. **Strobe Light Switch** -- OFF.
4. **Pitot Heat Switch** -- OFF.

NOTE

Perform a sideslip to keep the flames away from the fuel tank and cabin. Land as soon as possible using flaps only as required for final approach and touchdown.

ICING

INADVERTENT ICING ENCOUNTER

1. **Turn pitot heat switch ON**
2. **Turn back or change altitude** to obtain an outside air temperature that is less conducive to icing.
3. **Pull cabin heat control full out and open defroster outlets** to obtain maximum windshield defroster airflow. Adjust cabin air control to get maximum defroster heat and airflow.
4. Watch for signs of engine-related icing conditions. An unexplained loss in engine speed could be caused by ice blocking the air intake filter or, in extremely rare instances, ice completely blocking the fuel injection air reference tubes. Change the throttle position to obtain maximum RPM. This may require either advancing or retarding the throttle, dependent on where ice has accumulated in the system. Adjust mixture, as required, for maximum RPM.
5. Plan a landing at the nearest airport. With an extremely rapid ice build up, select a suitable "off airport" landing site.
6. With an ice accumulation of 1/4 inch or more on the wing leading edges, be prepared for significantly higher stall speed and a longer landing roll.
7. Leave wing flaps retracted. With a severe ice build up on the horizontal tail, the change in wing wake airflow direction caused by wing flap extension could result in a loss of elevator effectiveness.
8. Open left window and, if practical, scrape ice from a portion of the windshield for visibility in the landing approach.
9. Perform a landing approach using a forward slip, if necessary, for improved visibility.

10. Approach at 65 to 75 KIAS depending upon the amount of the accumulation.
11. Perform a landing in level attitude.

STATIC SOURCE BLOCKAGE
(Erroneous Instrument Reading Suspected)

1. **Static Pressure Alternate Source Valve -- PULL ON.**
2. Airspeed -- Consult appropriate calibration tables in Section 5.

LANDING WITH A FLAT MAIN TIRE

1. Approach -- NORMAL.
2. Wing Flaps -- 30°.
3. Touchdown -- GOOD MAIN TIRE FIRST, hold airplane off flat tire as long as possible with aileron control.
4. Directional Control -- MAINTAIN using brake on good wheel as required.

LANDING WITH A FLAT NOSE TIRE

1. Approach -- NORMAL.
2. Flaps -- AS REQUIRED.
3. Touchdown -- ON MAINS, hold nose wheel off the ground as long as possible.
4. When nose wheel touches down, maintain full up elevator as airplane slows to stop.

ELECTRICAL POWER SUPPLY SYSTEM MALFUNCTIONS

AMMETER SHOWS EXCESSIVE RATE OF CHARGE (Full Scale Deflection)

1. Alternator -- OFF.

⚠ CAUTION

WITH THE ALTERNATOR SIDE OF THE MASTER SWITCH OFF, COMPASS DEVIATIONS OF AS MUCH AS 25° MAY OCCUR.

2. Nonessential Electrical Equipment -- OFF.
3. Flight -- TERMINATE as soon as practical.

LOW VOLTAGE ANNUNCIATOR (VOLTS) ILLUMINATES DURING FLIGHT (Ammeter Indicates Discharge)

NOTE

Illumination of "VOLTS" on the annunciator panel may occur during low RPM conditions with an electrical load on the system such as during a low RPM taxi. Under these conditions, the annunciator will go out at higher RPM. The master switch need not be recycled since an overvoltage condition has not occurred to deactivate the alternator system.

1. Avionics Master Switch -- OFF.
2. Alternator Circuit Breaker (ALT FLD) -- CHECK IN.
3. Master Switch -- OFF (both sides).
4. Master Switch -- ON.
5. Low Voltage Annunciator (VOLTS) -- CHECK OFF.
6. Avionics Master Switch -- ON.

If low voltage annunciator (VOLTS) illuminates again:

7. Alternator -- OFF.
8. Nonessential Radio and Electrical Equipment -- OFF.
9. Flight -- TERMINATE as soon as practical.

VACUUM SYSTEM FAILURE

Left Vacuum (L VAC) Annunciator or Right Vacuum (VAC R) Annunciator Illuminates.

CAUTION

IF VACUUM IS NOT WITHIN NORMAL OPERATING LIMITS, A FAILURE HAS OCCURRED IN THE VACUUM SYSTEM AND PARTIAL PANEL PROCEDURES MAY BE REQUIRED FOR CONTINUED FLIGHT.

1. **Vacuum Gage -- CHECK** to ensure vacuum within normal operating limits.

AMPLIFIED EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

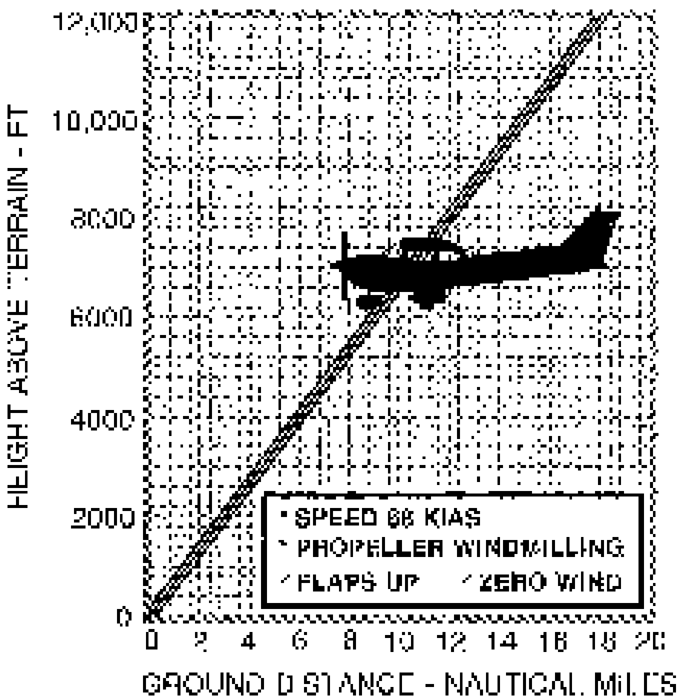
The following Amplified Emergency Procedures elaborate upon information contained in the Emergency Procedures Checklists portion of this section. These procedures also include information not readily adaptable to a checklist format, and material to which a pilot could not be expected to refer in resolution of a specific emergency. This information should be reviewed in detail prior to flying the airplane, as well as reviewed on a regular basis to keep pilot's knowledge of procedures fresh.

ENGINE FAILURE

If an engine failure occurs during the takeoff roll, the most important thing to do is stop the airplane on the remaining runway. Those extra items on the checklist will provide added safety after a failure of this type.

Prompt lowering of the nose to maintain airspeed and establish a glide attitude is the first response to an engine failure after takeoff. In most cases, the landing should be planned straight ahead with only small changes in direction to avoid obstructions. Altitude and airspeed are seldom sufficient to execute a 180° gliding turn necessary to return to the runway. The checklist procedures assume that adequate time exists to secure the fuel and ignition systems prior to touchdown.

After an engine failure in flight, the most important course of action is to continue flying the airplane. Best glide speed as shown in Figure 3-1 should be established as quickly as possible. While gliding toward a suitable landing area, an effort should be made to identify the cause of the failure. If time permits, an engine restart should be attempted as shown in the checklist. If the engine cannot be restarted, a forced landing without power must be completed.



0585C1011

Figure 3-1. Maximum Glide

FORCED LANDINGS

If all attempts to restart the engine fail and a forced landing is imminent, select a suitable field and prepare for the landing as discussed under the Emergency Landing Without Engine Power checklist. Transmit Mayday message on 121.5 MHz giving location and intentions and squawk 7700.

Before attempting an "off airport" landing with engine power available, one should fly over the landing area at a safe but low altitude to inspect the terrain for obstructions and surface conditions, proceeding as discussed under the Precautionary Landing With Engine Power checklist.

Prepare for ditching by securing or jettisoning heavy objects located in the baggage area and collect folded coats for protection of occupants' face at touchdown. Transmit Mayday message on 121.5 MHz giving location and intentions and squawk 7700. Avoid a landing flare because of difficulty in judging height over a water surface. The checklist assumes the availability of power to make a precautionary water landing. If power is not available, use of the airspeeds noted with minimum flap extension will provide a more favorable attitude for a power off ditching.

In a forced landing situation, do not set the AVIONICS MASTER switch or the airplane MASTER switch to the OFF position until a landing is assured. When these switches are in the OFF position, the airplane electrical systems are de-energized.

Before performing a forced landing, especially in remote and mountainous areas, activate the ELT transmitter by positioning the cockpit-mounted switch to the ON position. For complete information on ELT operation, refer to the Supplements, Section 9.

LANDING WITHOUT ELEVATOR CONTROL

Trim for horizontal flight (with an airspeed of approximately 65 KIAS and flaps set to 20°) by using throttle and elevator trim controls. Then **do not change the elevator trim control setting**; control the glide angle by adjusting power exclusively.

At the landing flare (round-out), the nose down moment resulting from power reduction is an adverse factor and the airplane may land on the nose wheel. Consequently, at flare, the elevator trim control should be adjusted toward the full nose up position and the power adjusted so that the airplane will rotate to the horizontal attitude for touchdown. Close the throttle at touchdown.

FIRES

Although engine fires are extremely rare in flight, the steps of the appropriate checklist should be followed if one is encountered. After completion of this procedure, execute a forced landing. Do not attempt to restart the engine.

The initial indication of an electrical fire is usually the odor of burning insulation. The checklist for this problem should result in elimination of the fire.

EMERGENCY OPERATION IN CLOUDS (Total Vacuum System Failure)

If both the vacuum pumps fail in flight, the directional indicator and attitude indicator will be disabled, and the pilot will have to rely on the turn coordinator if he inadvertently flies into clouds. If an autopilot is installed, it too may be affected. Refer to Section 9, Supplements, for additional details concerning autopilot operation. The following instructions assume that only the electrically powered turn coordinator is operative, and that the pilot is not completely proficient in instrument flying.

EXECUTING A 180° TURN IN CLOUDS

Upon inadvertently entering the clouds, an immediate plan should be made to turn back as follows:

1. Note the compass heading.
2. Using the clock, initiate a standard rate left turn, holding the turn coordinator symbolic airplane wing opposite the lower left index mark for 60 seconds. Then roll back to level flight by leveling the miniature airplane.

3. Check accuracy of the turn by observing the compass heading which should be the reciprocal of the original heading.
4. If necessary, adjust heading primarily with skidding motions rather than rolling motions so that the compass will read more accurately.
5. Maintain altitude and airspeed by cautious application of elevator control. Avoid over controlling by keeping the hands off the control wheel as much as possible and steering only with rudder.

EMERGENCY DESCENT THROUGH CLOUDS

If conditions preclude reestablishment of VFR flight by a 180° turn, a descent through a cloud deck to VFR conditions may be appropriate. If possible, obtain radio clearance for an emergency descent through clouds. To guard against a spiral dive, choose an easterly or westerly heading to minimize compass card swings due to changing bank angles. In addition, keep hands off the control wheel and steer a straight course with rudder control by monitoring the turn coordinator. Occasionally check the compass heading and make minor corrections to hold an approximate course. Before descending into the clouds, set up a stabilized letdown condition as follows:

1. Apply full rich mixture.
2. Reduce power to set up a 500 to 800 ft/min rate of descent.
3. Adjust the elevator trim for a stabilized descent at 70-80 KIAS.
4. Keep hands off the control wheel.
5. Monitor turn coordinator and make corrections by rudder alone.
6. Check trend of compass card movement and make cautious corrections with rudder to stop the turn.
7. Upon breaking out of clouds, resume normal cruising flight.

RECOVERY FROM SPIRAL DIVE IN THE CLOUDS

If a spiral is encountered in the clouds, proceed as follows:

1. Retard throttle to idle position.
2. Stop the turn by using coordinated aileron and rudder control to align the symbolic airplane in the turn coordinator with the horizon reference line.
3. Cautiously apply elevator back pressure to slowly reduce the airspeed to 80 KIAS.
4. Adjust the elevator trim control to maintain an 80 KIAS glide.
5. Keep hands off the control wheel, using rudder control to hold a straight heading.
6. Clear engine occasionally, but avoid using enough power to disturb the trimmed glide.
7. Upon breaking out of clouds, resume normal cruising flight.

INADVERTENT FLIGHT INTO ICING CONDITIONS

Flight into icing conditions is **prohibited** and extremely dangerous. An inadvertent encounter with these conditions can best be handled using the checklist procedures. The best procedure, of course, is to turn back or change altitude to escape icing conditions.

During these encounters, an unexplained loss in engine speed could be caused by ice blocking the air intake filter, or, in extremely rare instances, ice completely blocking the fuel injection air reference tubes. In either case, the throttle should be positioned to obtain maximum RPM (in some instances, the throttle may need to be retarded for maximum power). The mixture should then be adjusted, as required, to obtain maximum RPM.

STATIC SOURCE BLOCKED

If erroneous readings of the static source instruments (airspeed, altimeter and vertical speed) are suspected, the static pressure alternate source valve should be pulled ON, thereby supplying static pressure to these instruments from the cabin.

When using the alternate static source, refer to the Alternate Static Source Airspeed Calibration table in Section 5, Performance, for additional information.

Maximum airspeed and altimeter variation from normal is 4 knots and 30 feet over the normal operating range with the window(s) closed. See Section 5, Performance, for additional airspeed calibration data.

SPINS

Should an inadvertent spin occur, the following recovery procedure should be used:

1. RETARD THROTTLE TO IDLE POSITION.
2. PLACE AILERONS IN NEUTRAL POSITION.
3. APPLY AND **HOLD** FULL RUDDER OPPOSITE TO THE DIRECTION OF ROTATION.
4. JUST **AFTER** THE RUDDER REACHES THE STOP, MOVE THE CONTROL WHEEL **BRISKLY** FORWARD FAR ENOUGH TO BREAK THE STALL. Full down elevator may be required at aft center of gravity loadings to assure optimum recoveries.
5. **HOLD** THESE CONTROL INPUTS UNTIL ROTATION STOPS. Premature relaxation of the control inputs may extend the recovery.
6. AS ROTATION STOPS, NEUTRALIZE RUDDER, AND MAKE A SMOOTH RECOVERY FROM THE RESULTING DIVE.

NOTE

If disorientation precludes a visual determination of the direction of rotation, the symbolic airplane in the turn coordinator may be referred to for this information.

For additional information on spins and spin recovery, see the discussion under SPINS in Normal Procedures (Section 4).

ROUGH ENGINE OPERATION OR LOSS OF POWER

SPARK PLUG FOULING

A slight engine roughness in flight may be caused by one or more spark plugs becoming fouled by carbon or lead deposits. This may be verified by turning the ignition switch momentarily from BOTH to either L or R position. An obvious power loss in single ignition operation is evidence of spark plug or magneto trouble. Assuming that spark plugs are the more likely cause, lean the mixture to the recommended lean setting for cruising flight. If the problem does not clear up in several minutes, determine if a richer mixture setting will produce smoother operation. If not, proceed to the nearest airport for repairs using the BOTH position of the ignition switch unless extreme roughness dictates the use of a single ignition position.

MAGNETO MALFUNCTION

A sudden engine roughness or misfiring is usually evidence of magneto problems. Switching from BOTH to either L or R ignition switch position will identify which magneto is malfunctioning. Select different power settings and enrichen the mixture to determine if continued operation on BOTH magnetos is possible. If not, switch to the good magneto and proceed to the nearest airport for repairs.

ENGINE-DRIVEN FUEL PUMP FAILURE

Failure of the engine-driven fuel pump will result in an immediate loss of engine power, similar to fuel exhaustion or starvation, but while operating from a fuel tank containing adequate fuel. A sudden reduction in indicated fuel flow will occur just before loss of engine power.

If the engine-driven fuel pump fails, immediately set the auxiliary fuel pump switch (FUEL PUMP) to the ON position to restore engine power. The flight should be terminated as soon as practical and the engine-driven fuel pump repaired.

EXCESSIVE FUEL VAPOR INDICATIONS

Excessive fuel vapor is most likely to be generated during ground operations when operating at higher altitudes, in unusually warm temperatures or with more volatile fuel blends. Operation at or near idle RPM (low fuel flow) for extended periods will increase the chances of fuel vapor generation. (See "Leaning For Ground Operations", Section 4.)

Indicated fuel flow that is not stable (sudden changes greater than 1 gal/hr) is a sign that fuel vapor may be present in the system. Fuel flow indications that become less stable (increasing changes) may lead to power surges and power loss if not corrected.

If in flight vapor is suspected, smoother engine operation may result from making the following changes (singly or together): set the auxiliary fuel pump to the ON position, lean the mixture for smooth engine operation and select another fuel tank. Increasing the airspeed to provide more air flow through the cowling will aid in cooling the engine and fuel system components.

LOW OIL PRESSURE

If the low oil pressure annunciator (OIL PRESS) illuminates and oil temperature remains normal, the oil pressure sending unit or relief valve may be malfunctioning. Land at the nearest airport to inspect the source of trouble.

If a total loss of oil pressure is accompanied by a rise in oil temperature, there is good reason to suspect an engine failure is imminent. Reduce engine power immediately and select a suitable forced landing field. Use only the minimum power required to reach the desired touchdown spot.

ELECTRICAL POWER SUPPLY SYSTEM MALFUNCTIONS

Malfunctions in the electrical power supply system can be detected by periodic monitoring of the ammeter and low voltage annunciator (VOLTS); however, the cause of these malfunctions is usually difficult to determine. A broken alternator drive belt or wiring is most likely the cause of alternator failures, although other factors could cause the problem. A defective alternator control unit can also cause malfunctions. Problems of this nature constitute an electrical emergency and should be dealt with immediately. Electrical power malfunctions usually fall into two categories: excessive rate of charge and insufficient rate of charge. The following paragraphs describe the recommended remedy for each situation.

EXCESSIVE RATE OF CHARGE

After engine starting and heavy electrical usage at low engine speeds (such as extended taxiing) the battery condition will be low enough to accept above normal charging during the initial part of a flight. However, after thirty minutes of cruising flight, the ammeter should be indicating less than two needle widths of charging current. If the charging rate were to remain above this value on a long flight, the battery would overheat and evaporate the electrolyte at an excessive rate.

Electronic components in the electrical system can be adversely affected by higher than normal voltage. The alternator control unit includes an overvoltage sensor which normally will automatically shut down the alternator if the charge voltage reaches approximately 31.5 volts. If the overvoltage sensor malfunctions, as evidenced by an excessive rate of charge shown on the ammeter, the alternator should be turned off, nonessential electrical equipment turned off and the flight terminated as soon as practical.

INSUFFICIENT RATE OF CHARGE

NOTE

> The low voltage annunciator (VOLTS) may come on and ammeter discharge indications may occur during low RPM conditions with an electrical load on the system, such as during a low RPM taxi. Under these conditions, the annunciator will go out at higher RPM.

If the overvoltage sensor should shut down the alternator and trip the alternator circuit breaker (ALT FLD), or if the alternator output is low, a discharge rate will be shown on the ammeter followed by illumination of the low voltage annunciator (VOLTS). Since this may be a "nuisance" trip out, an attempt should be made to reactivate the alternator system. To reactivate, set the avionics master switch to the OFF position, check that the alternator circuit breaker (ALT FLD) is in, then set both sides of the master switch to the OFF position and then to the ON position. If the problem no longer exists, normal alternator charging will resume and the low voltage annunciator (VOLTS) will go off. The avionics master switch may then be returned to the ON position.

If the annunciator illuminates again, a malfunction is confirmed. In this event, the flight should be terminated and/or the current drain on the battery minimized because the battery can supply the electrical system for only a limited period of time. Battery power must be conserved for later operation of the wing flaps and, if the emergency occurs at night, for possible use of the landing lights during landing.

OTHER EMERGENCIES

WINDSHIELD DAMAGE

If a bird strike or other incident should damage the windshield in flight to the point of creating an opening, a significant loss in performance may be expected. This loss may be minimized in some cases (depending on amount of damage, altitude, etc.) by opening the side windows while the airplane is maneuvered for a landing at the nearest airport. If airplane performance or other adverse conditions preclude landing at an airport, prepare for an off airport landing in accordance with the Precautionary Landing With Engine Power or Ditching checklists.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

Page

AMPLIFIED PROCEDURES

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

INTRODUCTION

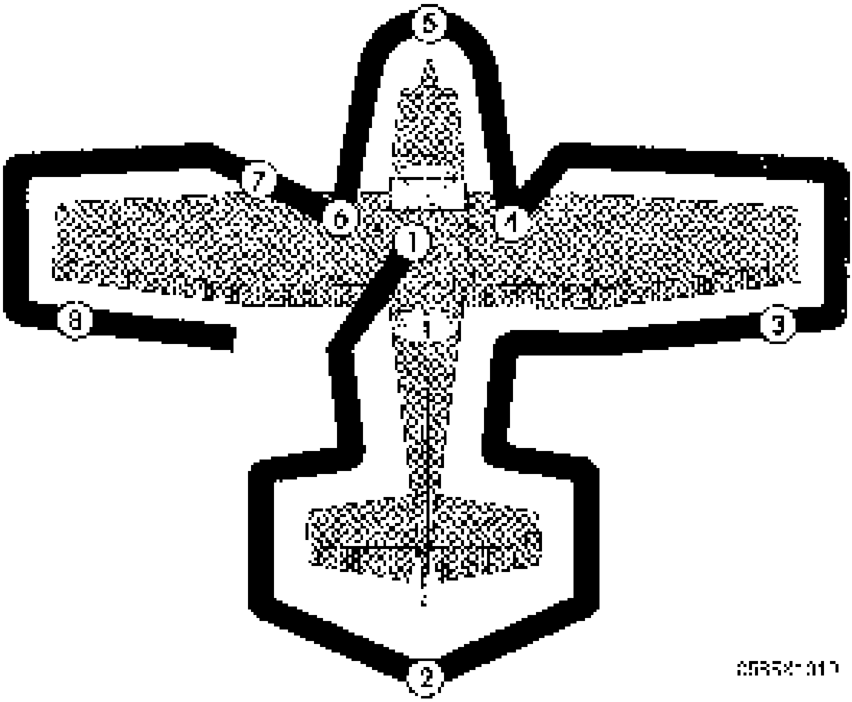
Section 4 provides checklist and amplified procedures for the conduct of normal operation. Normal procedures associated with optional systems can be found in the Supplements, Section 9.

AIRSPEEDS

AIRSPEEDS FOR NORMAL OPERATION

Unless otherwise noted, the following speeds are based on a maximum weight of 2550 pounds and may be used for any lesser weight.

Takeoff:	
Normal Climb Out	75-85 KIAS
Short Field Takeoff, Flaps 10°, Speed at 50 Feet	56 KIAS
Enroute Climb, Flaps Up:	
Normal, Sea Level	75-85 KIAS
Normal, 10,000 Feet	70-80 KIAS
Best Rate-of-Climb, Sea Level	74 KIAS
Best Rate-of-Climb, 10,000 Feet	72 KIAS
Best Angle-of-Climb, Sea Level	62 KIAS
Best Angle-of-Climb, 10,000 Feet	67 KIAS
Landing Approach:	
Normal Approach, Flaps Up	65-75 KIAS
Normal Approach, Flaps 30°	60-70 KIAS
Short Field Approach, Flaps 30°	61 KIAS
Balked Landing:	
Maximum Power, Flaps 20°	60 KIAS
Maximum Recommended Turbulent Air Penetration Speed:	
2550 Lbs	105 KIAS
2200 Lbs	98 KIAS
1900 Lbs	90 KIAS
Maximum Demonstrated Crosswind Velocity:	
Takeoff or Landing	15 KNOTS



NOTE

Visually check airplane for general condition during walk-around inspection. Airplane should be parked in a normal ground attitude (refer to Figure 1-1) to ensure that fuel drain valves allow for accurate sampling. Use of the refueling steps and assist handles will simplify access to the upper wing surfaces for visual checks and refueling operations. In cold weather, remove even small accumulations of frost, ice or snow from wing, tail and control surfaces. Also, make sure that control surfaces contain no internal accumulations of ice or debris. Prior to flight, check that pitot heater is warm to touch within 30 seconds with battery and pitot heat switches on. If a night flight is planned, check operation of all lights, and make sure a flashlight is available.

Figure 4-1. Preflight Inspection

CHECKLIST PROCEDURES

PREFLIGHT INSPECTION

1 CABIN

1. Pitot Tube Cover -- REMOVE. Check for pitot blockage.
2. Pilot's Operating Handbook -- AVAILABLE IN THE AIRPLANE.
3. Airplane Weight and Balance -- CHECKED.
4. Parking Brake -- SET.
5. Control Wheel Lock -- REMOVE.
6. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
7. Avionics Master Switch -- OFF.

WARNING

WHEN TURNING ON THE MASTER SWITCH, USING AN EXTERNAL POWER SOURCE, OR PULLING THE PROPELLER THROUGH BY HAND, TREAT THE PROPELLER AS IF THE IGNITION SWITCH WERE ON. DO NOT STAND, NOR ALLOW ANYONE ELSE TO STAND, WITHIN THE ARC OF THE PROPELLER, SINCE A LOOSE OR BROKEN WIRE OR A COMPONENT MALFUNCTION COULD CAUSE THE PROPELLER TO ROTATE.

8. Master Switch -- ON.
9. Fuel Quantity Indicators -- CHECK QUANTITY and ENSURE LOW FUEL ANNUNCIATORS (L LOW FUEL R) ARE EXTINGUISHED.
10. Avionics Master Switch -- ON.
11. Avionics Cooling Fan -- CHECK AUDIBLY FOR OPERATION.
12. Avionics Master Switch -- OFF.
13. Static Pressure Alternate Source Valve -- OFF.
14. Annunciator Panel Switch -- PLACE AND HOLD IN TST POSITION and ensure all annunciators illuminate.

15. Annunciator Panel Test Switch -- RELEASE. Check that appropriate annunciators remain on.

NOTE

When Master Switch is turned ON, some annunciators will flash for approximately 10 seconds before illuminating steadily. When panel TST switch is toggled up and held in position, all remaining lights will flash until the switch is released.

16. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
17. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- ON (Push Full In).
18. Flaps -- EXTEND.
19. Pitot Heat -- ON. (Carefully check that pitot tube is warm to touch within 30 seconds.)
20. Pitot Heat -- OFF.
21. Master Switch -- OFF.
22. Elevator Trim -- SET for takeoff.
23. Baggage Door -- CHECK, lock with key.
24. Autopilot Static Source Opening (if installed) -- CHECK for blockage.

(2) EMPENNAGE

1. Rudder Gust Lock (if installed) -- REMOVE.
2. Tail Tie-Down -- DISCONNECT.
3. Control Surfaces -- CHECK freedom of movement and security.
4. Trim Tab -- CHECK security.
5. Antennas -- CHECK for security of attachment and general condition.

(3) RIGHT WING Trailing Edge

1. Aileron -- CHECK freedom of movement and security.
2. Flap -- CHECK for security and condition.

(4) RIGHT WING

1. Wing Tie-Down -- DISCONNECT.

2. Main Wheel Tire -- CHECK for proper inflation and general condition (weather checks, tread depth and wear, etc...).
3. Fuel Tank Sump Quick Drain Valves -- DRAIN at least a cupful of fuel (using sampler cup) from each sump location to check for water, sediment, and proper fuel grade before each flight and after each refueling. If water is observed, take further samples until clear and then gently rock wings and lower tail to the ground to move any additional contaminants to the sampling points. Take repeated samples from all fuel drain points until all contamination has been removed. If contaminants are still present, refer to WARNING below and do not fly airplane.

WARNING

IF, AFTER REPEATED SAMPLING, EVIDENCE OF CONTAMINATION STILL EXISTS, THE AIRPLANE SHOULD NOT BE FLOWN. TANKS SHOULD BE DRAINED AND SYSTEM PURGED BY QUALIFIED MAINTENANCE PERSONNEL. ALL EVIDENCE OF CONTAMINATION MUST BE REMOVED BEFORE FURTHER FLIGHT.

4. Fuel Quantity -- CHECK VISUALLY for desired level.
5. Fuel Filler Cap -- SECURE and VENT UNOBSTRUCTED.

(5) NOSE

1. Fuel Strainer Quick Drain Valve (Located on bottom of fuselage) -- DRAIN at least a cupful of fuel (using sampler cup) from valve to check for water, sediment, and proper fuel grade before each flight and after each refueling. If water is observed, take further samples until clear and then gently rock wings and lower tail to the ground to move any additional contaminants to the sampling points. Take repeated samples from all fuel drain points, including the fuel reservoir and fuel selector, until all contamination has been removed. If contaminants are still present, refer to WARNING above and do not fly the airplane.

2. Engine Oil Dipstick/Filler Cap -- CHECK oil level, then check dipstick/filler cap SECURE. **Do not operate with less than five quarts.** Fill to eight quarts for extended flight.
3. Engine Cooling Air Inlets -- CLEAR of obstructions.
4. Propeller and Spinner -- CHECK for nicks and security.
5. Air Filter -- CHECK for restrictions by dust or other foreign matter.
6. Nose Wheel Strut and Tire -- CHECK for proper inflation of strut and general condition (weather checks, tread depth and wear, etc...) of tire.
7. Left Static Source Opening -- CHECK for blockage.

(6) LEFT WING

1. Fuel Quantity -- CHECK VISUALLY for desired level.
2. Fuel Filler Cap -- SECURE and VENT UNOBSTRUCTED.
3. Fuel Tank Sump Quick Drain Valves -- DRAIN at least a cupful of fuel (using sampler cup) from each sump location to check for water, sediment, and proper fuel grade before each flight and after each refueling. If water is observed, take further samples until clear and then gently rock wings and lower tail to the ground to move any additional contaminants to the sampling points. Take repeated samples from all fuel drain points until all contamination has been removed. If contaminants are still present, refer to WARNING on page 4-8 and do not fly airplane.
4. Main Wheel Tire -- CHECK for proper inflation and general condition (weather checks, tread depth and wear, etc...).

(7) LEFT WING Leading Edge

1. Fuel Tank Vent Opening -- CHECK for blockage.
2. Stall Warning Opening -- CHECK for blockage. To check the system, place a clean handkerchief over the vent opening and apply suction; a sound from the warning horn will confirm system operation.
3. Wing Tie-Down -- DISCONNECT.
4. Landing/Taxi Light(s) -- CHECK for condition and cleanliness of cover.

(8) LEFT WING Trailing Edge

1. Aileron -- CHECK for freedom of movement and security.
2. Flap -- CHECK for security and condition.

BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

1. Preflight Inspection -- COMPLETE.
2. Passenger Briefing -- COMPLETE.
3. Seats and Seat Belts -- ADJUST and LOCK. Ensure inertia reel locking.
4. Brakes -- TEST and SET.
5. Circuit Breakers -- CHECK IN.
6. Electrical Equipment -- OFF.

CAUTION

THE AVIONICS MASTER SWITCH MUST BE OFF DURING ENGINE START TO PREVENT POSSIBLE DAMAGE TO AVIONICS.

7. Avionics Master Switch -- OFF.
8. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
9. Fuel Shutoff Valve -- ON (push full in).
10. Avionics Circuit Breakers -- CHECK IN.

STARTING ENGINE (With Battery)

1. Throttle -- OPEN 1/4 INCH.
2. Mixture -- IDLE CUTOFF.
3. Propeller Area -- CLEAR.
4. Master Switch -- ON.
5. Flashing Beacon -- ON.

NOTE

If engine is warm, omit priming procedure of steps 6, 7 and 8 below.

6. Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch -- ON.
7. Mixture -- SET to FULL RICH (full forward) until stable fuel flow is indicated (usually 3 to 5 seconds), then set to IDLE CUTOFF (full aft) position.
8. Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch -- OFF.
9. Ignition Switch -- START (release when engine starts).
10. Mixture -- ADVANCE smoothly to RICH when engine starts.

NOTE

If engine floods (engine has been primed too much), turn off auxiliary fuel pump, place mixture to idle cutoff, open throttle 1/2 to full, and motor (crank) engine. When engine starts, set mixture to full rich and close throttle promptly.

11. Oil Pressure -- CHECK.
12. Navigation Lights -- ON as required.
13. Avionics Master Switch -- ON.
14. Radios -- ON.
15. Flaps -- RETRACT.

STARTING ENGINE (With External Power)

1. Throttle -- OPEN 1/4 INCH.
2. Mixture -- IDLE CUTOFF.
3. Propeller Area -- CLEAR.
4. Master Switch -- OFF.
5. External Power -- CONNECT to airplane receptacle.
6. Master Switch -- ON.
7. Flashing Beacon -- ON.

NOTE

If engine is warm, omit priming procedure of steps 8, 9 and 10 below.

8. Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch -- ON.
9. Mixture -- SET to FULL RICH (full forward) until stable fuel flow is indicated (usually 3 to 5 seconds), then set to IDLE CUTOFF (full aft) position.
10. Auxiliary Fuel Pump Switch -- OFF.
11. Ignition Switch -- START (release when engine starts).
12. Mixture -- ADVANCE smoothly to RICH when engine starts.

NOTE

If engine floods (engine has been primed too much), turn off auxiliary fuel pump, set mixture in idle cutoff, open throttle 1/2 to full, and motor (crank) engine. When engine starts, set mixture to full rich and close throttle promptly.

13. Oil Pressure -- CHECK.
14. External Power -- DISCONNECT from airplane receptacle. Secure external power door.
15. Electrical System -- CHECK FOR PROPER OPERATION.
    a. Master Switch -- OFF (disconnects both the battery and alternator from the system).

b. Taxi and Landing Light Switches -- ON.
(to provide an initial electrical load on the system).
c. Engine RPM -- REDUCE to idle.
(Minimum alternator output occurs at idle.)
d. Master Switch -- ON (with taxi and landing lights switched on).
(The ammeter should indicate in the negative direction, showing that the alternator output is below the load requirements, but the battery is supplying current to the system.)
e. Engine RPM -- INCREASE to approximately 1500 RPM
(as engine RPM increases, alternator output should increase to meet the system load requirements).
f. Ammeter and Low Voltage Annunciator -- CHECK
(the ammeter should indicate in the positive direction, showing that the alternator is supplying current and the Low Voltage Annunciator (VOLTS) should not be lighted).

NOTE

If the indications, as noted in Step "d" and Step "f", are not observed, the electrical system is not functioning properly. Corrective maintenance must be performed to provide for proper electrical system operation before flight.

16. Navigation Lights -- ON as required.
17. Avionics Master Switch -- ON.
18. Radios -- ON.
19. Flaps -- RETRACT.

BEFORE TAKEOFF

1. Parking Brake -- SET.
2. Passenger Seat Backs -- MOST UPRIGHT POSITION.
3. Seats and Seat Belts -- CHECK SECURE.
4. Cabin Doors -- CLOSED and LOCKED.
5. Flight Controls -- FREE and CORRECT.
6. Flight Instruments -- CHECK and SET.
7. Fuel Quantity -- CHECK.
8. Mixture -- RICH.
9. Fuel Selector Valve -- RECHECK BOTH.
10. Throttle -- 1800 RPM.
    a. Magnetos -- CHECK (RPM drop should not exceed 150 RPM on either magneto or 50 RPM differential between magnetos).
    b. Vacuum Gage -- CHECK.
    c. Engine Instruments and Ammeter -- CHECK.
11. Annunciator Panel -- Ensure no annunciators are illuminated.
12. Throttle -- CHECK IDLE.
13. Throttle -- 1000 RPM or LESS.
14. Throttle Friction Lock -- ADJUST.
15. Strobe Lights -- AS DESIRED.
16. Radios and Avionics -- SET.
17. NAV/GPS Switch (if installed) -- SET.
18. Autopilot (if installed) -- OFF.
19. Manual Electric Trim (if installed) -- CHECK.
20. Elevator Trim -- SET for takeoff.
21. Wing Flaps -- SET for takeoff (0°-10°).
22. Brakes -- RELEASE.

TAKEOFF

NORMAL TAKEOFF

1. Wing Flaps -- 0°-10°.
2. Throttle -- FULL OPEN.
3. Mixture -- RICH (above 3000 feet, LEAN to obtain maximum RPM).
4. Elevator Control -- LIFT NOSE WHEEL (at 55 KIAS).
5. Climb Speed -- 70-80 KIAS.
6. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT.

SHORT FIELD TAKEOFF

1. Wing Flaps -- 10°.
2. Brakes -- APPLY.
3. Throttle -- FULL OPEN.
4. Mixture -- RICH (above 3000 feet, LEAN to obtain maximum RPM).
5. Brakes -- RELEASE.
6. Elevator Control -- SLIGHTLY TAIL LOW.
7. Climb Speed -- 56 KIAS (until all obstacles are cleared).
8. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT slowly after reaching 60 KIAS.

ENROUTE CLIMB

1. Airspeed -- 70-85 KIAS.
2. Throttle -- FULL OPEN.
3. Mixture -- RICH (above 3000 feet, LEAN to obtain maximum RPM).

CRUISE

1. Power -- 2100-2700 RPM (No more than 75% is recommended).
2. Elevator Trim -- ADJUST.
3. Mixture -- LEAN.

DESCENT

1. Power -- AS DESIRED.
2. Mixture -- ADJUST for smooth operation (full rich for idle power).
3. Altimeter -- SET.
4. NAV/GPS Switch -- SET.
5. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
6. Wing Flaps -- AS DESIRED (0° - 10° below 110 KIAS, 10° - 30° below 85 KIAS).

BEFORE LANDING

1. Pilot and Passenger Seat Backs -- MOST UPRIGHT POSITION.
2. Seats and Seat Belts -- SECURED and LOCKED.
3. Fuel Selector Valve -- BOTH.
4. Mixture -- RICH.
5. Landing/Taxi Lights -- ON.
6. Autopilot (if installed) -- OFF.

LANDING

NORMAL LANDING

1. Airspeed -- 65-75 KIAS (flaps UP).
2. Wing Flaps -- AS DESIRED (0°-10° below 110 KIAS, 10°-30° below 85 KIAS).
3. Airspeed -- 60-70 KIAS (flaps DOWN).
4. Touchdown -- MAIN WHEELS FIRST.
5. Landing Roll -- LOWER NOSE WHEEL GENTLY.
6. Braking -- MINIMUM REQUIRED.

SHORT FIELD LANDING

1. Airspeed -- 65-75 KIAS (flaps UP).
2. Wing Flaps -- FULL DOWN (30°).
3. Airspeed -- 61 KIAS (until flare).
4. Power -- REDUCE to idle after clearing obstacle.
5. Touchdown -- MAIN WHEELS FIRST.
6. Brakes -- APPLY HEAVILY.
7. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT.

BALKED LANDING

1. Throttle -- FULL OPEN.
2. Wing Flaps -- RETRACT TO 20°.
3. Climb Speed -- 60 KIAS.
4. Wing Flaps -- 10° (until obstacles are cleared).
   RETRACT (after reaching a safe altitude and 65 KIAS).

AFTER LANDING

1. Wing Flaps -- UP.

SECURING AIRPLANE

1. Parking Brake -- SET.
2. Electrical Equipment, Autopilot (if installed) -- OFF.
3. Avionics Master Switch -- OFF.
4. Mixture -- IDLE CUTOFF (pulled full out).
5. Ignition Switch -- OFF.
6. Master Switch -- OFF.
7. Control Lock -- INSTALL.
8. Fuel Selector Valve -- LEFT or RIGHT to prevent crossfeeding.

AMPLIFIED PROCEDURES

PREFLIGHT INSPECTION

The Preflight Inspection, described in Figure 4-1 and adjacent checklist, is required prior to each flight. If the airplane has been in extended storage, has had recent major maintenance, or has been operated from marginal airports, a more extensive exterior inspection is recommended.

After major maintenance has been performed, the flight and trim tab controls should be double checked for free and correct movement and security. The security of all inspection plates on the airplane should be checked following periodic inspections. If the airplane has been waxed or polished, check the external static pressure source hole for stoppage.

If the airplane has been exposed to much ground handling in a crowded hangar, it should be checked for dents and scratches on wings, fuselage, and tail surfaces, damage to navigation and anti-collision lights, damage to nose wheel as a result of exceeding tow limits, and avionics antennas.

Outside storage for long periods may result in dust and dirt accumulation on the induction air filter, obstructions in airspeed system lines, water contaminants in fuel tanks and insect/bird/rodent nests in any opening. If any water is detected in the fuel system, the fuel tank sump quick drain valves, fuel reservoir quick drain valve, and fuel strainer quick drain valve should all be thoroughly drained again. Then, the wings should be gently rocked and the tail lowered to the ground to move any further contaminants to the sampling points. Repeated samples should then be taken at **all** quick drain points until **all** contamination has been removed. If, after repeated sampling, evidence of contamination still exists, the fuel tanks should be completely drained and the fuel system cleaned.

Additionally, if the airplane has been stored outside in windy or gusty areas, or tied down adjacent to taxiing airplanes, special attention should be paid to control surface stops, hinges, and brackets to detect the presence of potential wind damage.

If the airplane has been operated from muddy fields or in snow or slush, check the main and nose gear wheel fairings for obstructions and cleanliness. Operation from a gravel or cinder field will require extra attention to propeller tips and abrasion on leading edges of the horizontal tail. Stone damage to the propeller can seriously reduce the fatigue life of the blades.

Airplanes that are operated from rough fields, especially at high altitudes, are subjected to abnormal landing gear abuse. Frequently check all components of the landing gear, shock strut, tires, and brakes. If the shock strut is insufficiently extended, undue landing and taxi loads will be subjected on the airplane structure.

To prevent loss of fuel in flight, make sure the fuel tank filler caps are tightly sealed after any fuel system check or servicing. Fuel system vents should also be inspected for obstructions, ice or water, especially after exposure to cold, wet weather.

STARTING ENGINE

In cooler weather, the engine compartment temperature drops off rapidly following engine shutdown and the injector nozzle lines remain nearly full of fuel.

However, in warmer weather, engine compartment temperatures may increase rapidly following engine shutdown, and fuel in the lines will vaporize and escape into the intake manifold. Hot weather starting procedures depend considerably on how soon the next engine start is attempted. Within the first 20 to 30 minutes after shutdown, the fuel manifold is adequately primed and the empty injector nozzle lines will fill before the engine dies. However, after approximately 30 minutes, the vaporized fuel in the manifold will have nearly dissipated and some slight "priming" could be required to refill the nozzle lines and keep the engine running after the initial start. Starting a hot engine is facilitated by advancing the mixture control promptly to 1/3 open when the engine starts, and then smoothly to full rich as power develops.

Should the engine tend to die after starting, turn on the auxiliary fuel pump temporarily and adjust the throttle and/or mixture as necessary to keep the engine running. In the event of over priming or flooding, turn off the auxiliary fuel pump, open the throttle from 1/2 to full open, and continue cranking with the mixture full lean. When the engine starts, smoothly advance the mixture control to full rich and retard the throttle to desired idle speed.

If the engine is under primed (most likely in cold weather with a cold engine) it will not start at all, and additional priming will be necessary.

After starting, if the oil pressure gage does not begin to show pressure within 30 seconds in the summer time and approximately one minute in very cold weather, stop the engine and investigate. Lack of oil pressure can cause serious engine damage.

NOTE

Additional details concerning cold weather starting and operation may be found under COLD WEATHER OPERATION paragraphs in this section.

RECOMMENDED STARTER DUTY CYCLE

Crank the starter for 10 seconds followed by a 20 second cool down period. This cycle can be repeated two additional times, followed by a ten minute cool down period before resuming cranking. After cool down, crank the starter again, three cycles of 10 seconds followed by 20 seconds of cool down. If the engine still fails to start, an investigation to determine the cause should be initiated.

LEANING FOR GROUND OPERATIONS

1. For all ground operations, after starting the engine and when the engine is running smoothly:

    a. set the throttle to 1200 RPM.
    b. lean the mixture for maximum RPM.
    c. set the throttle to an RPM appropriate for ground operations (800 to 1000 RPM recommended).

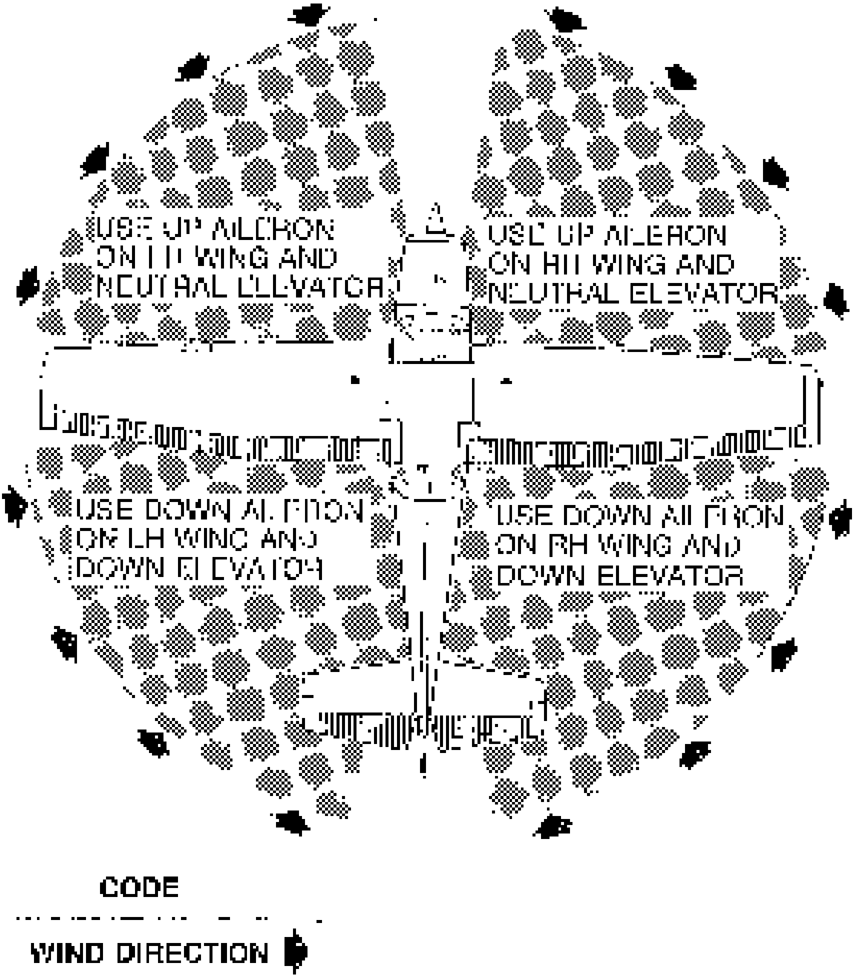
NOTE

If ground operation will be required after the BEFORE TAKEOFF checklist is completed, lean the mixture again (as described above) until ready for the TAKEOFF checklist.

TAXIING

When taxiing, it is important that speed and use of brakes be held to a minimum and that all controls be utilized (Refer to Figure 4-2, Taxiing Diagram) to maintain directional control and balance.

Taxiing over loose gravel or cinders should be done at low engine speed to avoid abrasion and stone damage to the propeller tips.



NOTE

Strong quartering tail winds require caution. Avoid sudden bursts of the throttle and sharp braking when the airplane is in this attitude. Use the steerable nose wheel and rudder to maintain direction.

0585X1020

Figure 4-2. Taxiing Diagram

BEFORE TAKEOFF

WARM UP

If the engine idles (approximatley 600 RPM) and accelerates smoothly, the airplane is ready for takeoff. Since the engine is closely cowled for efficient in-flight engine cooling, precautions should be taken to avoid overheating during prolonged engine operation on the ground. Also, long periods of idling may cause fouled spark plugs.

MAGNETO CHECK

The magneto check should be made at 1800 RPM as follows. Move ignition switch first to R position and note RPM. Next move switch back to BOTH to clear the other set of plugs. Then move switch to the L position, note RPM and return the switch to the BOTH position. RPM drop should not exceed 150 RPM on either magneto or show greater than 50 RPM differential between magnetos. If there is a doubt concerning operation of the ignition system, RPM checks at higher engine speeds will usually confirm whether a deficiency exists.

An absence of RPM drop may be an indication of faulty grounding of one side of the ignition system or should be cause for suspicion that the magneto timing is set in advance of the setting specified.

ALTERNATOR CHECK

Prior to flights where verification of proper alternator and alternator control unit operation is essential (such as night or instrument flights), a positive verification can be made by loading the electrical system momentarily (3 to 5 seconds) with the landing light or by operating the wing flaps during the engine runup (1800 RPM). The ammeter will remain within a needle width of its initial reading if the alternator and alternator control unit are operating properly.

LANDING LIGHTS

If landing lights are to be used to enhance the visibility of the airplane in the traffic pattern or enroute, it is recommended that only the taxi light be used. This will extend the service life of the landing light appreciably.

TAKEOFF

POWER CHECK

It is important to check full throttle engine operation early in the takeoff roll. Any sign of rough engine operation or sluggish engine acceleration is good cause for discontinuing the takeoff. If this occurs, you are justified in making a thorough full throttle static runup before another takeoff is attempted. The engine should run smoothly and turn approximately 2300 - 2400 RPM with mixture leaned to provide maximum RPM.

Full throttle run ups over loose gravel are especially harmful to propeller tips. When takeoffs must be made over a gravel surface, it is very important that the throttle be advanced slowly. This allows the airplane to start rolling before high RPM is developed, and the gravel will be blown back of the propeller rather than pulled into it. When unavoidable small dents appear in the propeller blades, they should be immediately corrected as described in Section 8 under Propeller Care.

Prior to takeoff from fields above 3000 feet elevation, the mixture should be leaned to give maximum RPM in a full throttle, static runup.

After full throttle is applied, adjust the throttle friction lock clockwise to prevent the throttle from creeping back from a maximum power position. Similar friction lock adjustments should be made as required in other flight conditions to maintain a fixed throttle setting.

WING FLAP SETTINGS

Normal takeoffs are accomplished with wing flaps 0° - 10°. Using 10° wing flaps reduces the ground roll and total distance over an obstacle by approximately 10 percent. **Flap deflections greater than 10° are not approved for takeoff.** If 10° wing flaps are used for takeoff, they should be left down until all obstacles are cleared and a safe flap retraction speed of 60 KIAS is reached. On a short field, 10° wing flaps and an obstacle clearance speed of 56 KIAS should be used.

Soft or rough field takeoffs are performed with 10° flaps by lifting the airplane off the ground as soon as practical in a slightly tail low attitude. If no obstacles are ahead, the airplane should be leveled off immediately to accelerate to a higher climb speed. When departing a soft field with an aft C.G. loading, the elevator trim should be adjusted towards the nose down direction to give comfortable control wheel forces during the initial climb.

CROSSWIND TAKEOFF

Takeoffs into strong crosswind conditions normally are performed with the minimum flap setting necessary for the field length, to minimize the drift angle immediately after takeoff. With the ailerons partially deflected into the wind, the airplane is accelerated to a speed slightly higher than normal, then pulled off briskly to prevent possible settling back to the runway while drifting. When clear of the ground, make a coordinated turn into the wind to correct for drift.

ENROUTE CLIMB

Normal enroute climbs are performed with flaps up and full **throttle** and at speeds 5 to 10 knots higher than best rate-of-climb speeds for the best combination of performance, visibility and engine cooling. The mixture should be full **rich** below 3000 feet and may be leaned above 3000 feet for smoother operation or to obtain maximum RPM. For maximum rate of climb, use the best rate-of-climb speeds showing in the Rate of Climb chart in Section 5. If an obstruction dictates the use of a steep climb angle, the best angle-of-climb speed should be used with flaps up and maximum power. Climbs at speeds lower than the best rate-of-climb speed should be of short duration to improve engine cooling.

CRUISE

Normal cruise is performed between 45% and 75% power. The engine RPM and corresponding fuel consumption for various altitudes can be determined by using the data in Section 5.

NOTE

Cruising should be done at 75% power as much as practicable until a total of 50 hours has accumulated or oil consumption has stabilized. Operation at this higher power will ensure proper seating of the rings and is applicable to new engines, and engines in service following cylinder replacement or top overhaul of one or more cylinders.

The Cruise Performance charts in Section 5 provide the pilot with detailed information concerning the cruise performance of the Model 172S in still air. Power and altitude, as well as winds aloft, have a strong influence on the time and fuel needed to complete any flight.

The Cruise Performance Table, Figure 4-3, illustrates the true airspeed and nautical miles per gallon during cruise for various altitudes and percent powers, and is based on standard conditions and zero wind. This table should be used as a guide, along with the available winds aloft information, to determine the most favorable altitude and power setting for a given trip. The selection of cruise altitude on the basis of the most favorable wind conditions and the use of low power settings are significant factors that should be considered on every trip to reduce fuel consumption.

In addition to power settings, proper leaning techniques also contribute to greater range and are figured into cruise performance tables. To achieve the recommended lean mixture fuel consumption figures shown in Section 5, the mixture should be leaned using the exhaust gas temperature (EGT) indicator as noted.

NOTE

At lower power it may be necessary to richen the mixture slightly to obtain smooth operation.

ALTITUDE	75% POWER		65% POWER		55% POWER	
	KTAS	NMPG	KTAS	NMPG	KTAS	NMPG
Sea Level	114	11.2	108	12.0	101	12.8
4000 feet	119	11.7	112	12.4	104	13.2
8000 feet	124	12.2	117	12.9	107	13.6

Figure 4-3. Cruise Performance Table

LEANING WITH AN EGT INDICATOR

At or below 75% power in level cruise flight, the exhaust gas temperature (EGT) indicator is used to lean the fuel-air mixture for best performance or economy. The Cruise Performance charts in Section 5 are based on the EGT to adjust the mixture to Recommended Lean per Figure 4-4.

MIXTURE DESCRIPTION	EXHAUST GAS TEMPERATURE
RECOMMENDED LEAN (Pilot's Operating Handbook)	50° Rich of Peak EGT
BEST ECONOMY	Peak EGT

Figure 4-4. EGT Table

Use the mixture control vernier adjustment (rotate the knob CCW to lean the mixture) to **slowly** lean, from full rich or maximum RPM mixture, while monitoring the EGT indicator. As the EGT indication begins to increase, continue to **slowly** lean the mixture until an EGT indication decrease is just detectable. Reverse the adjustment **slowly** in the rich direction until an EGT indication decrease is again just detectable, then set the EGT index pointer to match the peak indication. The mixture may be leaned slightly to return to peak EGT or may be further enriched to Recommended Lean mixture as desired. **Continuous operation at mixture settings lean of peak EGT is prohibited.** Any change in altitude or throttle position will require that peak EGT be redetermined and the desired mixture be reset. Under some conditions, engine roughness may occur at peak EGT. In this case, operate at Recommended Lean mixture.

As noted in Figure 4-4, operation at peak EGT provides the best fuel economy. Operation at peak EGT results in approximately 4% greater range and approximately a 3 knot decrease in airspeed from the figures shown in the Performance section of this handbook. Recommended Lean mixture provides best level cruise performance (generally close to "best power" or maximum RPM).

NOTE

The EGT indicator requires several seconds to respond to mixture adjustments and changes in exhaust gas temperature. More rapid changes in EGT indication are neither necessary nor desirable. Determining peak EGT and setting the desired mixture should take approximately one minute when the adjustments are made sufficiently slowly and accurately.

FUEL SAVINGS PROCEDURES FOR FLIGHT TRAINING OPERATIONS

For best fuel economy during flight training operations, the following procedures are recommended.

1. After engine start and for all ground operations, set the throttle to 1200 RPM and lean the mixture for maximum RPM. Leave the mixture at this setting until beginning the BEFORE TAKEOFF checklist. After the BEFORE TAKEOFF checklist is complete re-lean the mixture as described above until ready for the TAKEOFF checklist.
2. Lean the mixture for maximum RPM during full throttle climbs above 3000 feet. The mixture may remain leaned (maximum RPM at full throttle) for practicing maneuvers such as stalls and slow flight.
3. Lean the mixture for maximum RPM during all operations at any altitude, including those below 3000 feet, when using 75% or less power.

NOTE

- When cruising or maneuvering at 60% or less power, the mixture may be further leaned until the EGT indicator needle peaks and is then enrichened 50°F. This is especially applicable to cross-country training flights, but should be practiced during transition flight to and from the practice area as well.
- Using the above recommended procedures can provide fuel savings in excess of 5% when compared to typical training operations at full rich mixture. In addition, the above procedures will minimize spark plug fouling since the reduction in fuel consumption results in a proportional reduction in tetraethyl lead passing through the engine.

FUEL VAPOR PROCEDURES

The engine fuel system can become susceptible to fuel vapor formation on the ground during warm weather. This will generally occur when the outside ambient air temperature is above 80°F. The situation is further aggravated by the fact that the engine fuel flows are lower at idle and taxi engine speeds. When vapor occurs as evidenced by idle engine speed and fuel flow fluctuations, the following procedures are recommended.

1. With the mixture full rich, set the throttle at 1800 RPM to 2000 RPM. Maintain this power setting for 1 to 2 minutes or until smooth engine operation returns.
2. Retard the throttle to idle to verify normal engine operation.
3. Advance the throttle to 1200 RPM and lean the mixture as described under FUEL SAVINGS PROCEDURES FOR FLIGHT TRAINING OPERATIONS.
4. Just prior to TAKEOFF, apply full throttle, for approximately 10 seconds to verify smooth engine operation for takeoff.

NOTE

When the engine is operated above 1800 RPM, the resulting increased fuel flow also makes for lower fuel temperatures throughout the engine fuel system. This increased flow purges the fuel vapor and the cooler fuel minimizes vapor formation.

In addition to the above procedures, the sections below should be reviewed and where applicable, adhered to:

Section 2 --	Take note of the placard on "When Switching From Dry Tank".
Section 3 --	Take note of the excessive fuel vapor procedures in both the checklist and the amplified procedures sections.
Section 4 --	Take note of the hot weather operational notes and procedures in both the checklist and the amplified procedures sections.
Section 7 --	Take note of the altitude operational procedures and the section on auxiliary fuel pump operation.

STALLS

The stall characteristics are conventional and aural warning is provided by a stall warning horn which sounds between 5 and 10 knots above the stall in all configurations.

Power off stall speeds at maximum weight for both forward and aft C.G. positions are presented in Section 5.

SPINS

Intentional spins are approved when the airplane is operated in the utility category. Spins with baggage loadings or occupied rear seat(s) are not approved.

However, before attempting to perform spins several items should be carefully considered to assure a safe flight. No spins should be attempted without first having received dual instruction both in spin entries and spin recoveries from a qualified instructor who is familiar with the spin characteristics of the Cessna 172S.

The cabin should be clean and all loose equipment (including the microphone and rear seat belts) should be stowed or secured. For a solo flight in which spins will be conducted, the copilot's seat belt and shoulder harness should also be secured. Care should be taken to ensure that the pilot can easily reach the flight controls and produce maximum control travels.

It is recommended that, where feasible, entries be accomplished at high enough altitude that recoveries are completed 4000 feet or more above ground level. At least 1000 feet of altitude loss should be allowed for a 1-turn spin and recovery, while a 6-turn spin and recovery may require somewhat more than twice that amount. For example, the recommended entry altitude for a 6-turn spin would be 6000 feet above ground level. In any case, entries should be planned so that recoveries are completed well above the minimum 1500 feet above ground level required by FAR 91.303. Another reason for using high altitudes for practicing spins is that a greater field of view is provided which will assist in maintaining pilot orientation.

The normal entry is made from a power off stall. As the stall is approached, the elevator control should be smoothly pulled to the full aft position. Just prior to reaching the stall "break", rudder control in the desired direction of the spin rotation should be applied so that full rudder deflection is reached almost simultaneously with reaching full aft elevator. A slightly greater rate of deceleration than for normal stall entries, application of ailerons in the direction of the desired spin, and the use of power at the entry will assure more consistent and positive entries to the spin. As the airplane begins to spin, reduce the power to idle and return the ailerons to neutral. Both elevator and rudder controls should be held full with the spin until the spin recovery is initiated. An inadvertent relaxation of either of these controls could result in the development of a nose down spiral.

For the purpose of training in spins and spin recoveries, a 1 or 2 turn spin is adequate and should be used. Up to 2 turns, the spin will progress to a fairly rapid rate of rotation and a steep attitude. Application of recovery controls will produce prompt recoveries (within 1/4 turn). During extended spins of two to three turns or more, the spin will tend to change into a spiral, particularly to the right. This will be accompanied by an increase in airspeed and gravity loads on the airplane. If this occurs, recovery should be accomplished promptly but smoothly by leveling the wings and recovering from the resulting dive.

Regardless of how many turns the spin is held or how it is entered, the following recovery technique should be used:

1. VERIFY THAT THROTTLE IS IN IDLE POSITION AND AILERONS ARE NEUTRAL.
2. APPLY AND **HOLD** FULL RUDDER OPPOSITE TO THE DIRECTION OF ROTATION.
3. JUST **AFTER** THE RUDDER REACHES THE STOP, MOVE THE CONTROL WHEEL **BRISKLY** FORWARD FAR ENOUGH TO BREAK THE STALL.
4. **HOLD** THESE CONTROL INPUTS UNTIL ROTATION STOPS.
5. AS ROTATION STOPS, NEUTRALIZE RUDDER, AND MAKE A SMOOTH RECOVERY FROM THE RESULTING DIVE.

NOTE

> If disorientation precludes a visual determination of the direction of rotation, the symbolic airplane in the turn coordinator may be referred to for this information.

Variations in basic airplane rigging or in weight and balance due to installed equipment or right seat occupancy can cause differences in behavior, particularly in extended spins. These differences are normal and will result in variations in the spin characteristics and in the spiraling tendencies for spins of more than 2 turns. However, the recovery technique should always be used and will result in the most expeditious recovery from any spin.

Intentional spins with flaps extended are prohibited, since the high speeds which may occur during recovery are potentially damaging to the flap/wing structure.

LANDING

NORMAL LANDING

Normal landing approaches can be made with power on or power off with any flap setting desired. Surface winds and air turbulence are usually the primary factors in determining the most comfortable approach speeds. Steep slips should be avoided with flap settings greater than 20° due to a slight tendency for the elevator to oscillate under certain combinations of airspeed, sideslip angle, and center of gravity loadings.

Actual touchdown should be made with power off and on the main wheels first to reduce the landing speed and subsequent need for braking in the landing roll. The nose wheel is lowered to the runway gently after the speed has diminished to avoid unnecessary nose gear loads. This procedure is especially important in rough or soft field landings.

SHORT FIELD LANDING

For a short field landing in smooth air conditions, make an approach at 61 KIAS with 30° flaps using enough power to control the glide path. (Slightly higher approach speeds should be used under turbulent air conditions.) After all approach obstacles are cleared, progressively reduce power and maintain the approach speed by lowering the nose of the airplane. Touchdown should be made with power off and on the main wheels first. Immediately after touchdown, lower the nose wheel and apply heavy braking as required. For maximum brake effectiveness, retract the flaps, hold the control wheel full back, and apply maximum brake pressure without sliding the tires.

CROSSWIND LANDING

When landing in a strong crosswind, use the minimum flap setting required for the field length. If flap settings greater than 20° are used in sideslips with full rudder deflection, some elevator oscillation may be felt at normal approach speeds. However, this does not affect control of the airplane. Although the crab or combination method of drift correction may be used, the wing low method gives the best control. After touchdown, hold a straight course with the steerable nose wheel and occasional braking if necessary.

The maximum allowable crosswind velocity is dependent upon pilot capability as well as airplane limitations. Operation in direct crosswinds of 15 knots has been demonstrated.

BALKED LANDING

In a balked landing (go-around) climb, reduce the flap setting to 20° immediately after full power is applied. If obstacles must be cleared during the go-around climb, reduce the wing flap setting to 10° and maintain a safe airspeed until the obstacles are cleared. Above 3000 feet, lean the mixture to obtain maximum RPM. After clearing any obstacles, the flaps may be retracted as the airplane accelerates to the normal flaps up climb speed.

COLD WEATHER OPERATION

Special consideration should be given to the operation of the airplane fuel system during the winter season or prior to any flight in cold temperatures. Proper preflight draining of the fuel system is especially important and will eliminate any free water accumulation. The use of additives such as isopropyl alcohol or diethylene glycol monomethyl ether may also be desirable. Refer to Section 8 for information on the proper use of additives.

Cold weather often causes conditions which require special care during airplane operations. Even small accumulations of frost, ice, or snow must be removed, particularly from wing, tail and all control surfaces to assure satisfactory flight performance and handling. Also, control surfaces must be free of any internal accumulations of ice or snow.

If snow or slush covers the takeoff surface, allowance must be made for takeoff distances which will be increasingly extended as the snow or slush depth increases. The depth and consistency of this cover can, in fact, prevent takeoff in many instances.

WARNING

WHEN PULLING THE PROPELLER THROUGH BY HAND, TREAT IT AS IF THE IGNITION SWITCH IS TURNED ON. A LOOSE OR BROKEN GROUND WIRE ON EITHER MAGNETO COULD CAUSE THE ENGINE TO FIRE.

Prior to starting on cold mornings, it is advisable to pull the propeller through several times by hand to "break loose" or "limber" the oil, thus conserving battery energy.

When air temperatures are below 20°F (-6°C), the use of an external preheater and an external power source are recommended whenever possible to obtain positive starting and to reduce wear and abuse to the engine and electrical system. Preheat will thaw the oil trapped in the oil cooler, which probably will be congealed prior to starting in extremely cold temperatures.

When using an external power source, the master switch must be in the OFF position before connecting the external power source to the airplane receptacle. See Section 7, Ground Service Plug Receptacle for external power source operations.

Cold weather starting procedures are the same as the normal starting procedures. Use caution to prevent inadvertent forward movement of the airplane during starting when parked on snow or ice.

NOTE

If the engine does not start during the first few attempts, or if engine firing diminishes in strength, it is probable that the spark plugs have been frosted over. Preheat must be used before another start is attempted.

During cold weather operations, no indication will be apparent on the oil temperature gage prior to takeoff if outside air temperatures are very cold. After a suitable warm up period (2 to 5 minutes at 1000 RPM), accelerate the engine several times to higher engine RPM. If the engine accelerates smoothly and the oil pressure remains normal and steady, the airplane is ready for takeoff.

WINTERIZATION KIT

A winterization kit is provided and may be utilized when cold weather operations are conducted.

HOT WEATHER OPERATION

Refer to the general warm temperature starting information under Starting Engine in this section. Avoid prolonged engine operation on the ground.

NOISE CHARACTERISTICS AND NOISE REDUCTION

The certificated noise level for the Model 172S at 2550 pounds maximum weight is 75.1 dB(A). No determination has been made by the Federal Aviation Administration that the noise levels of this airplane are or should be acceptable or unacceptable for operation at, into, or out of, any airport.

The following procedures are suggested to minimize the effect of airplane noise on the public:

1. Pilots operating airplanes under VFR over outdoor assemblies of persons, recreational and park areas, and other noise sensitive areas should make every effort to fly not less than 2000 feet above the surface, weather permitting, even though flight at a lower level may be consistent with the provisions of government regulations.
2. During departure from or approach to an airport, climb after takeoff and descent for landing should be made so as to avoid prolonged flight at low altitude near noise sensitive areas.

NOTE

The above recommended procedures do not apply where they would conflict with Air Traffic Control clearances or instructions, or where, in the pilot's judgment, an altitude of less than 2000 feet is necessary to adequately exercise the duty to see and avoid other airplanes.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

Performance data charts on the following pages are presented so that you may know what to expect from the airplane under various conditions, and also, to facilitate the planning of flights in detail and with reasonable accuracy. The data in the charts has been computed from actual flight tests with the airplane and engine in good condition and approximating average piloting techniques.

It should be noted that performance information presented in the range and endurance profile charts allows for 45 minutes reserve fuel at the specified power setting. Fuel flow data for cruise is based on the recommended lean mixture setting at all altitudes. Some indeterminate variables such as mixture leaning technique, fuel metering characteristics, engine and propeller condition, and air turbulence may account for variations of 10% or more in range and endurance. Therefore, it is important to utilize all available information to estimate the fuel required for the particular flight and to flight plan in a conservative manner.

USE OF PERFORMANCE CHARTS

Performance data is presented in tabular or graphical form to illustrate the effect of different variables. Sufficiently detailed information is provided in the tables so that conservative values can be selected and used to determine the particular performance figure with reasonable accuracy.

SAMPLE PROBLEM

The following sample flight problem utilizes information from the various charts to determine the predicted performance data for a typical flight. Assume the following information has already been determined:

AIRPLANE CONFIGURATION:	
Takeoff weight	2550 Pounds
Usable fuel	53 Gallons
TAKEOFF CONDITIONS:	
Field pressure altitude	1500 Feet
Temperature	28°C (16°C Above Standard)
Wind component along runway	12 Knot Headwind
Field length	3500 Feet

CRUISE CONDITIONS:

Total distance	360 Nautical Miles
Pressure altitude	7500 Feet
Temperature	16°C (16°C Above Standard)
Expected wind enroute	10 Knot Headwind

LANDING CONDITIONS:

Field pressure altitude	2000 Feet
Temperature	25°C
Field length	3000 Feet

TAKEOFF

The takeoff distance chart, Figure 5-5, should be consulted, keeping in mind that distances shown are based on the short field technique. Conservative distances can be established by reading the chart at the next higher value of weight, altitude and temperature. For example, in this particular sample problem, the takeoff distance information presented for a weight of 2550 pounds, pressure altitude of 2000 feet and a temperature of 30°C should be used and results in the following:

Ground roll	1285 Feet
Total distance to clear a 50-foot obstacle	2190 Feet

These distances are well within the available takeoff field length. However, a correction for the effect of wind may be made based on Note 3 of the takeoff chart. The correction for a 12 knot headwind is:

$$\frac{12 \text{ Knots}}{9 \text{ Knots}} \times 10\% = 13\% \text{ Decrease}$$

This results in the following distances, corrected for wind:

Ground roll, zero wind	1285
Decrease in ground roll (1285 feet X 13%)	167
Corrected ground roll	1118 Feet

Total distance to clear a 50-foot obstacle, zero wind	2190
Decrease in total distance (2190 feet X 13%)	285
Corrected total distance to clear 50-foot obstacle	1905 Feet

CRUISE

The cruising altitude should be selected based on a consideration of trip length, winds aloft, and the airplane's performance. A typical cruising altitude and the expected wind enroute have been given for this sample problem. However, the power setting selection for cruise must be determined based on several considerations. These include the cruise performance characteristics presented in Figure 5-8, the range profile chart presented in Figure 5-9, and the endurance profile chart presented in Figure 5-10.

The relationship between power and range is illustrated by the range profile chart. Considerable fuel savings and longer range result when lower power settings are used. For this sample problem, a cruise power of approximately 65% will be used.

The cruise performance chart, Figure 5-8, is entered at 8000 feet pressure altitude and 20°C above standard temperature. These values most nearly correspond to the planned altitude and expected temperature conditions. The engine speed chosen is 2600 RPM, which results in the following:

Power	64%
True airspeed	117 Knots
Cruise fuel flow	8.9 GPH

FUEL REQUIRED

The total fuel requirement for the flight may be estimated using the performance information in Figure 5-7 and Figure 5-8. For this sample problem, Figure 5-7 shows that a climb from 2000 feet to 8000 feet requires 2.2 gallons of fuel. The corresponding distance during the climb is 15 nautical miles. These values are for a standard temperature and are sufficiently accurate for most flight planning purposes. However, a further correction for the effect of temperature may be made as noted on the climb chart. The approximate effect of a non-standard temperature is to increase the time, fuel, and distance by 10% for each 10°C above standard temperature, due to the lower rate of climb. In this case, assuming a temperature 16°C above standard (16°C - 0°C), the correction would be:

$$\frac{16°C}{10°C} \times 10\% = 16\% \text{ Increase}$$

With this factor included, the fuel estimate would be calculated as follows:

Fuel to climb, standard temperature	2.2
Increase due to non-standard temperature (2.2 X 16%)	0.4
Corrected fuel to climb	2.6 Gallons

Using a similar procedure for the distance to climb results in 18 nautical miles. (15 nm using chart + 2.4 nm to correct for higher than standard temperature = 17.4 nm rounded up to 18 nm.)

The resultant cruise distance is:

Total distance	360
Climb distance	-18
Cruise distance	342 nm

With an expected 10 knot headwind, the ground speed for cruise is predicted to be:

117
-10

107 Knots

Therefore, the time required for the cruise portion of the trip is:

$$\frac{342 \text{ Nautical Miles}}{107 \text{ Knots}} = 3.2 \text{ Hours}$$

The fuel required for cruise is:

3.2 hours X 8.9 gallons/hour = 28.5 Gallons

A 45-minute reserve requires:

$$\frac{45}{60} \times 8.9 \text{ gallons / hour} = 6.7 \text{ Gallons}$$

The total estimated fuel required is as follows:

Engine start, taxi, and takeoff	1.4
Climb	2.6
Cruise	28.5
Reserve	6.7
Total fuel required	39.2 Gallons

Once the flight is underway, ground speed checks will provide a more accurate basis for estimating the time enroute and the corresponding fuel required to complete the trip with ample reserve.

LANDING

A procedure similar to takeoff should be used for estimating the landing distance at the destination airport. Figure 5-11 presents landing distance information for the short field technique. The distances corresponding to 2000 feet and 30°C are as follows:

Ground roll	650 Feet
Total distance to clear a 50-foot obstacle	1455 Feet

A correction for the effect of wind may be made based on Note 2 of the landing chart using the same procedure as outlined for takeoff.

DEMONSTRATED OPERATING TEMPERATURE

Satisfactory engine cooling has been demonstrated for this airplane with an outside air temperature 23°C above standard. This is not to be considered as an operating limitation. Reference should be made to Section 2 for engine operating limitations.

AIRSPEED CALIBRATION

NORMAL STATIC SOURCE

CONDITION:

Power required for level flight or maximum power descent.

FLAPS UP												
KIAS	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
KCAS	56	62	70	78	87	97	107	117	127	137	147	157
FLAPS 10°												
KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	---	---	---	---
KCAS	51	57	63	71	80	89	99	109	---	---	---	---
FLAPS 30°												
KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	85	---	---	---	---	---	---
KCAS	50	56	63	72	81	86	---	---	---	---	---	---

Figure 5-1. Airspeed Calibration (Sheet 1 of 2)

AIRSPEED CALIBRATION

ALTERNATE STATIC SOURCE

CONDITION:

Power required for level flight or maximum power descent.

FLAPS UP												
KIAS	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
KCAS	56	62	68	76	85	95	105	115	125	134	144	154
FLAPS 10°												
KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	---	---	---	---
KCAS	51	55	60	68	77	86	96	105	---	---	---	---
FLAPS 30°												
KIAS	40	50	60	70	80	85	---	---	---	---	---	---
KCAS	49	54	61	68	78	83	---	---	---	---	---	---

NOTE:

Windows closed, ventilators closed, cabin heater, cabin air, and defroster on maximum.

Figure 5-1. Airspeed Calibration (Sheet 2 of 2)

TEMPERATURE CONVERSION CHART

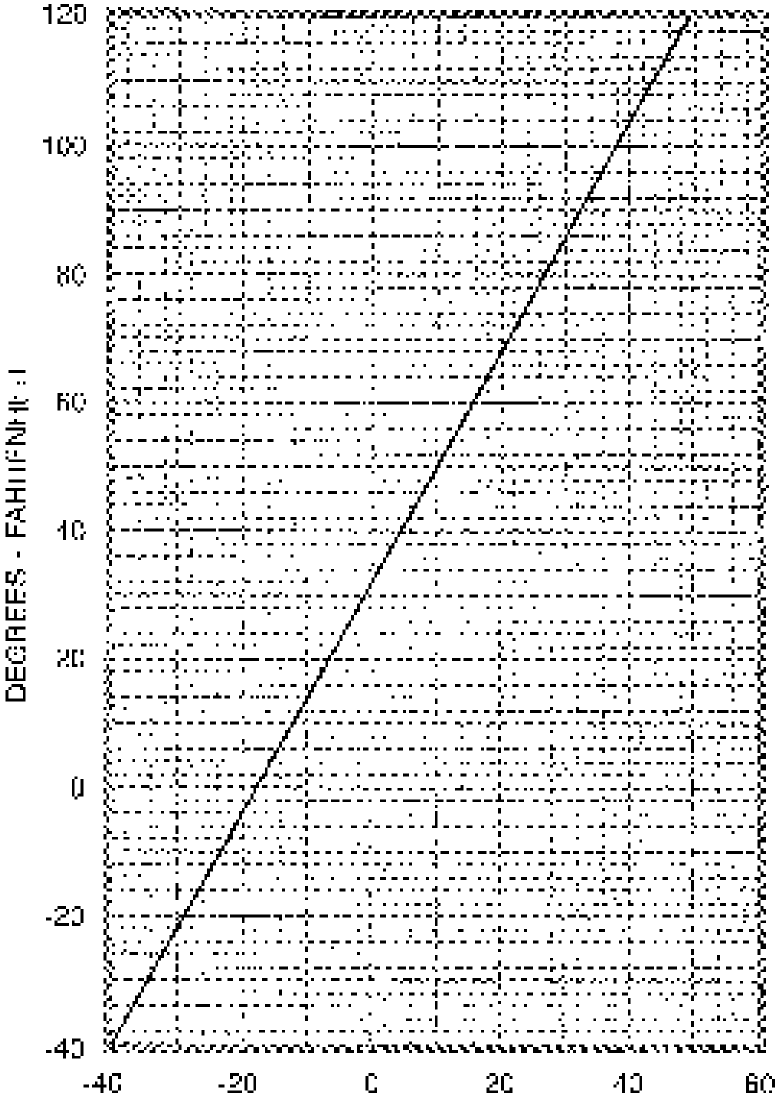


Figure 5-2. Temperature Conversion Chart

STALL SPEEDS AT 2550 POUNDS

Conditions:
Power Off

MOST REARWARD CENTER OF GRAVITY

FLAP SETTING	ANGLE OF BANK							
	0°		30°		45°		60°	
	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS
UP	48	53	52	57	57	63	68	75
10°	42	50	45	54	50	59	59	71
30°	40	48	43	52	48	57	57	68

MOST FORWARD CENTER OF GRAVITY

FLAP SETTING	ANGLE OF BANK							
	0°		30°		45°		60°	
	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS	KIAS	KCAS
UP	48	53	52	57	57	63	68	75
10°	43	51	46	55	51	61	61	72
30°	40	48	43	52	48	57	57	68

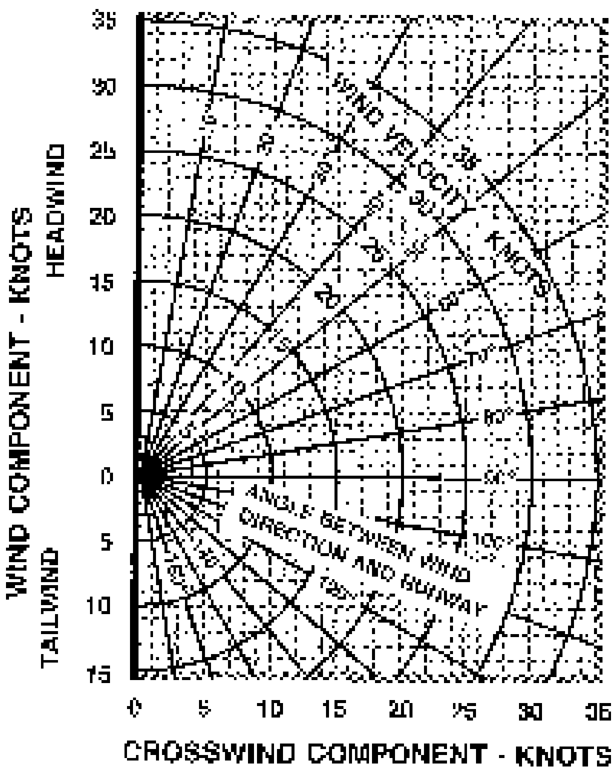
NOTES:

1. Altitude loss during a stall recovery may be as much as 230 feet.
2. KIAS values are approximate.

Figure 5-3. Stall Speeds

WIND COMPONENTS

NOTE:
Maximum demonstrated crosswind velocity is 15 knots (not a limitation).



NOTE

Maximum demonstrated crosswind component is 15 knots (not a limitation).

0585C1003

Figure 5-4. Crosswind Components

SHORT FIELD TAKEOFF DISTANCE
AT 2550 POUNDS

CONDITIONS:

Flaps 10°
Full Throttle Prior to Brake Release
Paved, level, dry runway
Zero Wind
Lift Off: 51 KIAS
Speed at 50 Ft: 56 KIAS

Press Alt In Feet	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst
S. L.	860	1465	925	1575	995	1690	1070	1810	1150	1945
1000	940	1600	1010	1720	1090	1850	1170	1990	1260	2135
2000	1025	1755	1110	1890	1195	2035	1285	2190	1380	2355
3000	1125	1925	1215	2080	1310	2240	1410	2420	1515	2605
4000	1235	2120	1335	2295	1440	2480	1550	2685	1660	2880
5000	1355	2345	1465	2545	1585	2755	1705	2975	1825	3205
6000	1495	2605	1615	2830	1745	3075	1875	3320	2010	3585
7000	1645	2910	1785	3170	1920	3440	2065	3730	2215	4045
8000	1820	3265	1970	3575	2120	3880	2280	4225	2450	4615

NOTES:

1. Short field technique as specified in Section 4.
2. Prior to takeoff from fields above 3000 feet elevation, the mixture should be leaned to give maximum RPM in a full throttle, static runup.
3. Decrease distances 10% for each 9 knots headwind. For operation with tail winds up to 10 knots, increase distances by 10% for each 2 knots.
4. For operation on dry, grass runway, increase distances by 15% of the "ground roll" figure.

Figure 5-5. Short Field Takeoff Distance (Sheet 1 of 3)

SHORT FIELD TAKEOFF DISTANCE
AT 2400 POUNDS

CONDITIONS:

Flaps 10°
Full Throttle Prior to Brake Release
Paved, level, dry runway
Zero Wind
Lift Off: 48 KIAS
Speed at 50 Ft: 54 KIAS

Press Alt in Feet	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst
S. L.	745	1275	800	1370	860	1470	925	1570	995	1685
1000	810	1390	875	1495	940	1605	1010	1720	1085	1845
2000	885	1520	955	1635	1030	1760	1110	1890	1190	2030
3000	970	1665	1050	1795	1130	1930	1215	2080	1305	2230
4000	1065	1830	1150	1975	1240	2130	1335	2295	1430	2455
5000	1170	2015	1265	2180	1360	2355	1465	2530	1570	2715
6000	1285	2230	1390	2410	1500	2610	1610	2805	1725	3015
7000	1415	2470	1530	2685	1650	2900	1770	3125	1900	3370
8000	1560	2755	1690	3000	1815	3240	1950	3500	2095	3790

NOTES:

1. Short field technique as specified in Section 4.
2. Prior to takeoff from fields above 3000 feet elevation, the mixture should be leaned to give maximum RPM in a full throttle, static runup.
3. Decrease distances 10% for each 9 knots headwind. For operation with tail winds up to 10 knots, increase distances by 10% for each 2 knots.
4. For operation on dry, grass runway, increase distances by 15% of the "ground roll" figure.

Figure 5-5. Short Field Takeoff Distance (Sheet 2 of 3)

SHORT FIELD TAKEOFF DISTANCE
AT 2200 POUNDS

CONDITIONS:

Flaps 10°
Full Throttle Prior to Brake Release
Paved, level, dry runway
Zero Wind
Lift Off: 44 KIAS
Speed at 50 Ft: 50 KIAS

Press Alt In Feet	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst
S. L.	610	1055	655	1130	705	1205	760	1290	815	1380
1000	665	1145	720	1230	770	1315	830	1410	890	1505
2000	725	1250	785	1340	845	1435	905	1540	975	1650
3000	795	1365	860	1465	925	1570	995	1685	1065	1805
4000	870	1490	940	1605	1010	1725	1090	1855	1165	1975
5000	955	1635	1030	1765	1110	1900	1195	2035	1275	2175
6000	1050	1800	1130	1940	1220	2090	1310	2240	1400	2395
7000	1150	1985	1245	2145	1340	2305	1435	2475	1540	2650
8000	1270	2195	1370	2375	1475	2555	1580	2745	1695	2950

NOTES:

1. Short field technique as specified in Section 4.
2. Prior to takeoff from fields above 3000 feet elevation, the mixture should be leaned to give maximum RPM in a full throttle, static runup.
3. Decrease distances 10% for each 9 knots headwind. For operation with tail winds up to 10 knots, increase distances by 10% for each 2 knots.
4. For operation on dry, grass runway, increase distances by 15% of the "ground roll" figure.

Figure 5-5. Short Field Takeoff Distance (Sheet 3 of 3)

MAXIMUM RATE-OF-CLIMB AT 2550 POUNDS

CONDITIONS:

Flaps Up
Full Throttle

PRESS ALT FT	CLIMB SPEED KIAS	RATE OF CLIMB - FPM			
		-20°C	0°C	20°C	40°C
S.L.	74	855	785	710	645
2000	73	760	695	625	560
4000	73	685	620	555	495
6000	73	575	515	450	390
8000	72	465	405	345	285
10,000	72	360	300	240	180
12,000	72	255	195	135	---

NOTE:

1. Mixture leaned above 3,000 feet for maximum RPM.

Figure 5-6. Maximum Rate of Climb

TIME, FUEL AND DISTANCE TO CLIMB AT 2550 POUNDS

CONDITIONS:

Flaps Up
Full Throttle
Standard Temperature

PRESS ALT FT	CLIMB SPEED KIAS	RATE OF CLIMB FPM	FROM SEA LEVEL		
			TIME IN MIN	FUEL USED GAL	DIST NM
S.L.	74	730	0	0.0	0
1000	73	695	1	0.4	2
2000	73	655	3	0.8	4
3000	73	620	4	1.7	6
4000	73	600	6	1.5	8
5000	73	550	8	1.9	10
6000	73	505	10	2.2	13
7000	73	455	12	2.6	16
8000	72	410	14	3.0	19
9000	72	360	17	3.4	22
10,000	72	315	20	3.9	27
11,000	72	265	24	4.4	32
12,000	72	220	28	5.0	38

NOTES:

1. Add 1.4 gallons of fuel for engine start, taxi and takeoff allowance.
2. Mixture leaned above 3,000 feet for maximum RPM.
3. Increase time, fuel and distance by 10% for each 10°C above standard temperature.
4. Distances shown are based on zero wind.

Figure 5-7. Time, Fuel and Distance to Climb

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture At All Altitudes (Refer to Section 4, Cruise)

PRESS ALT FT	RPM	20°C BELOW STANDARD TEMP			STANDARD TEMPERATURE			20°C ABOVE STANDARD TEMP		
		% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
2000	2550	83	117	11.1	77	118	10.5	72	117	9.9
	2500	78	115	10.6	73	115	9.9	68	115	9.4
	2400	69	111	9.6	64	110	9.0	60	109	8.5
	2300	61	105	8.6	57	104	8.1	53	102	7.7
	2200	53	99	7.7	50	97	7.3	47	95	6.9
	2100	47	92	6.9	44	90	6.6	42	89	6.3
4000	2600	83	120	11.1	77	120	10.4	72	119	9.8
	2550	79	118	10.6	73	117	9.9	68	117	9.4
	2500	74	115	10.1	69	115	9.5	64	114	8.9
	2400	65	110	9.1	61	109	8.5	57	107	8.1
	2300	58	104	8.2	54	102	7.7	51	101	7.3
	2200	51	98	7.4	48	96	7.0	45	94	6.7
	2100	45	91	6.5	42	89	6.4	40	87	6.1
6000	2650	83	122	11.1	77	122	10.4	72	121	9.8
	2600	78	120	10.6	73	119	9.9	68	118	9.4
	2500	70	115	9.6	65	114	9.0	60	112	8.5
	2400	62	109	8.6	57	108	8.2	54	106	7.7
	2300	54	103	7.8	51	101	7.4	48	99	7.0
	2200	48	96	7.1	45	94	6.7	43	92	6.4

Figure 5-8. Cruise Performance (Sheet 1 of 2)

CRUISE PERFORMANCE

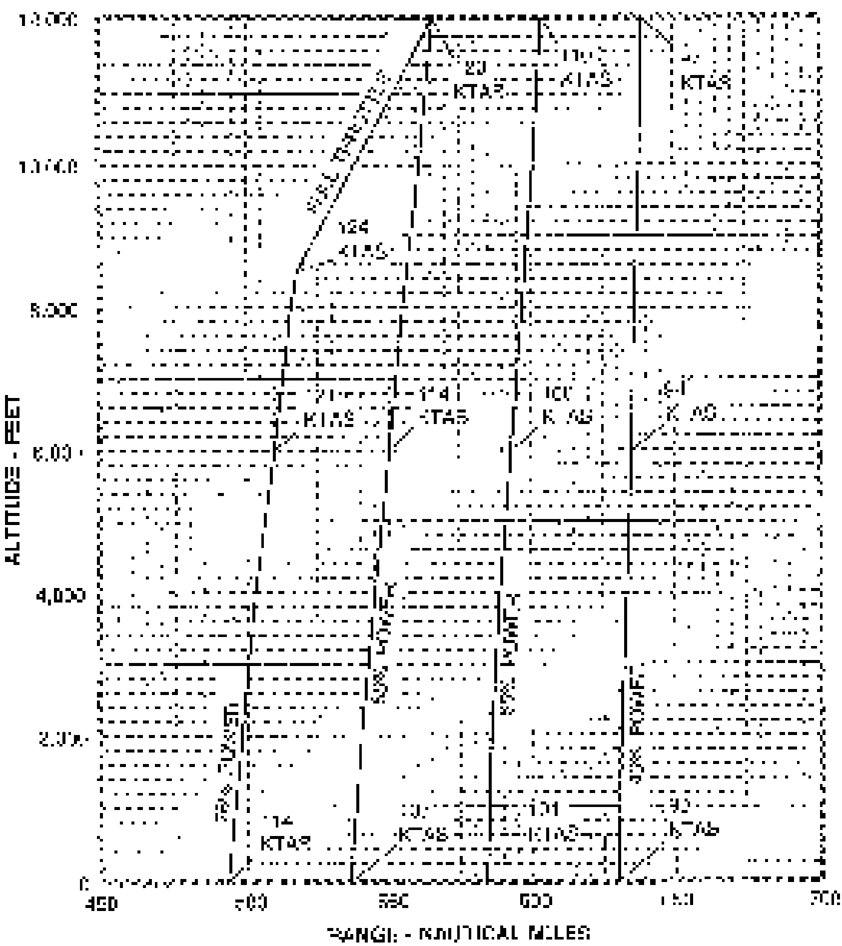
CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture At All Altitudes (Refer to Section 4, Cruise)

PRESS ALT FT	RPM	20°C BELOW STANDARD TEMP			STANDARD TEMPERATURE			20°C ABOVE STANDARD TEMP		
		% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH	% BHP	KTAS	GPH
8000	2700	83	125	11.1	77	124	10.4	71	123	9.7
	2650	78	122	10.5	72	122	9.9	67	120	9.3
	2600	74	120	10.0	68	119	9.4	64	117	8.9
	2500	65	114	9.1	61	112	8.6	57	111	8.1
	2400	58	108	8.2	54	106	7.8	51	104	7.4
	2300	52	101	7.5	48	99	7.1	46	97	6.8
	2200	46	94	6.8	43	92	6.5	41	90	6.2
10,000	2700	78	124	10.5	72	123	9.8	67	122	9.3
	2650	73	122	10.0	68	120	9.4	63	119	8.9
	2600	69	119	9.5	64	117	9.0	60	115	8.5
	2500	62	113	8.7	57	111	8.2	54	109	7.8
	2400	55	106	7.9	51	104	7.5	49	102	7.1
	2300	49	100	7.2	46	97	6.8	44	95	6.5
12,000	2650	69	121	9.5	64	119	8.9	60	117	8.5
	2600	65	118	9.1	61	116	8.5	57	114	8.1
	2500	58	111	8.3	54	109	7.8	51	107	7.4
	2400	52	105	7.5	49	102	7.1	46	100	6.8
	2300	47	98	6.9	44	95	6.6	41	92	6.3

Figure 5-8. Cruise Performance (Sheet 2 of 2)

RANGE PROFILE
45 MINUTES RESERVE
53 GALLONS USABLE FUEL

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture for Cruise At All Altitudes
Standard Temperature
Zero Wind

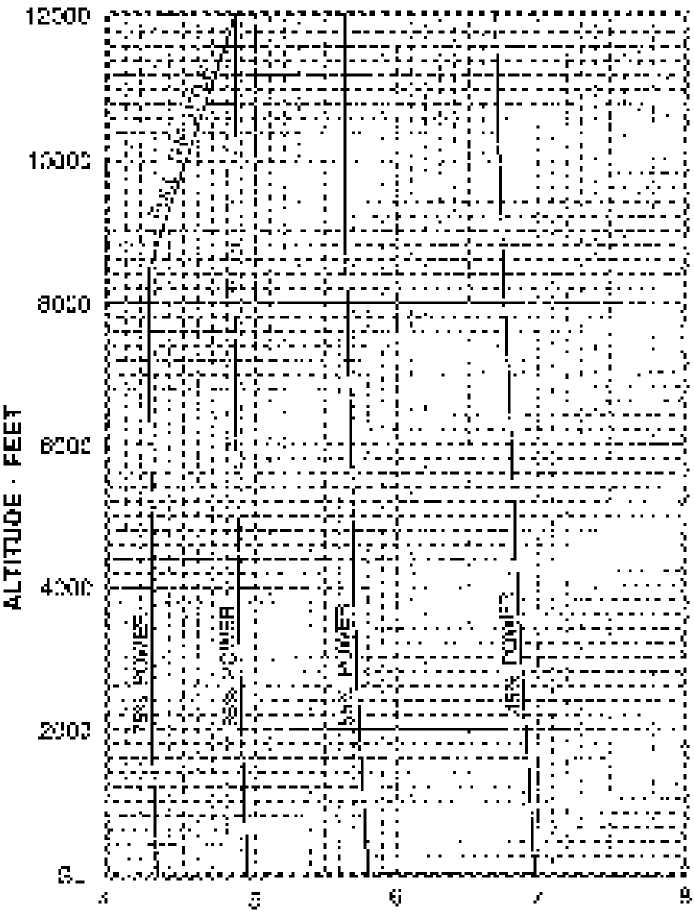


NOTES:
1. This chart allows for the fuel used for engine start, taxi, takeoff and climb, and the distance during climb.

Figure 5-9. Range Profile

ENDURANCE PROFILE
45 MINUTES RESERVE
53 GALLONS USABLE FUEL

CONDITIONS:
2550 Pounds
Recommended Lean Mixture for Cruise At All Altitudes
Standard Temperature



NOTE:

1. This chart allows for the fuel used for engine start, taxi, takeoff and climb, and the time during climb.

Figure 5-10. Endurance Profile

SHORT FIELD LANDING DISTANCE
AT 2550 POUNDS

CONDITIONS:

Flaps 30°
Power Off
Maximum Braking
Paved, level, dry runway
Zero Wind
Speed at 50 Ft: 61 KIAS

Press Alt In Feet	0°C		10°C		20°C		30°C		40°C	
	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst	Grnd Roll Ft	Total Ft To Clear 50 Ft Obst
S.L.	545	1290	565	1320	585	1350	605	1380	625	1415
1000	565	1320	585	1350	605	1385	625	1420	650	1450
2000	585	1355	610	1385	630	1420	650	1455	670	1490
3000	610	1385	630	1425	655	1460	675	1495	695	1530
4000	630	1425	655	1460	675	1495	700	1535	725	1570
5000	655	1460	680	1500	705	1535	725	1575	750	1615
6000	680	1500	705	1540	730	1580	755	1620	780	1660
7000	705	1545	730	1585	760	1625	785	1665	810	1705
8000	735	1585	760	1630	790	1670	815	1715	840	1755

NOTES:

1. Short field technique as specified in Section 4.
2. Decrease distances 10% for each 9 knots headwind. For operation with tail winds up to 10 knots, increase distances by 10% for each 2 knots.
3. For operation on dry, grass runway, increase distances by 45% of the "ground roll" figure.
4. If landing with flaps up, increase the approach speed by 9 KIAS and allow for 35% longer distances.

Figure 5-11. Short Field Landing Distance

SECTION 6
WEIGHT & BALANCE/
EQUIPMENT LIST

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

INTRODUCTION

This section describes the procedure for establishing the basic empty weight and moment of the airplane. Sample forms are provided for reference. Procedures for calculating the weight and moment for various operations are also provided.

It should be noted that specific information regarding the weight, arm, moment, and installed equipment for this airplane as delivered from the factory can only be found in the plastic envelope carried in the back of this handbook.

WARNING

IT IS THE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE PILOT TO ENSURE THE AIRPLANE IS LOADED PROPERLY. OPERATION OUTSIDE OF PRESCRIBED WEIGHT AND BALANCE LIMITATIONS COULD RESULT IN AN ACCIDENT AND SERIOUS OR FATAL INJURY.

AIRPLANE WEIGHING PROCEDURES

1. Preparation:
   a. Inflate tires to recommended operating pressures.
   b. Defuel airplane. Refer to the Maintenance Manual.
   c. Service engine oil as required to obtain a normal full indication (8 quarts on dipstick).
   d. Move sliding seats to the most forward position.
   e. Raise flaps to the fully retracted position.
   f. Place all control surfaces in neutral position.
   g. Remove all non-required items from airplane.
2. Leveling:
   a. Place scales under each wheel (minimum scale capacity, 500 pounds nose, 1000 pounds each main).
   b. Deflate the nose tire and/or lower or raise the nose strut to properly center the bubble in the level (Refer to Figure 6-1).

AIRPLANE WEIGHING FORM

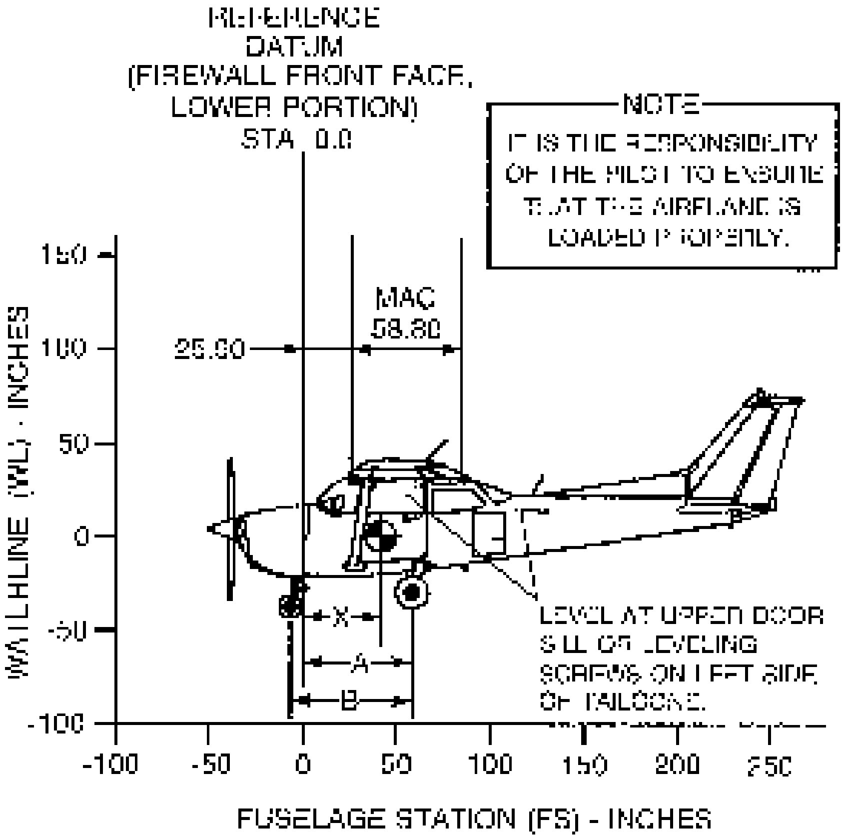


Figure 6-1. Airplane Weighing Form (Sheet 1 of 2)

LOCATING CG WITH AIRPLANE ON LANDING GEAR

FORMULA for Longitudinal CG:

$$(X) = (A) - \frac{\text{NOSE GEAR NET WEIGHT } (\ \ ) \times (B)}{\text{NOSE AND MAIN LANDING GEAR WEIGHT TOTALED } (\ \ )} = (\ \ ) \text{ INCHES AFT OF DATUM}$$

MEASURING A AND B

MEASURE A AND B PER PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK INSTRUCTIONS TO ASSIST IN LOCATING CG WITH AIRPLANE WEIGHED ON LANDING GEAR.

LOCATING PERCENT MAC

FORMULA for Percent MAC:

$$\text{CG Percent MAC} = \frac{(\text{CG Arm of Airplane}) - 25.90}{0.5880}$$

LEVELING PROVISIONS

LONGITUDINAL - LEFT SIDE OF TAILCONE AT FS 108.00 & 142.00

AIRPLANE AS WEIGHED TABLE

POSITION	SCALE READING	SCALE DRIFT	TARE	NET WEIGHT
LEFT SIDE				
RIGHT SIDE				
NOSE				
AIRPLANE TOTAL AS WEIGHED				

BASIC EMPTY WEIGHT AND CENTER-OF-GRAVITY TABLE

ITEM	WEIGHT POUNDS	CG ARM (INCHES)	MOMENT (INCH-POUNDS /1000)
AIRPLANE (CALCULATED OR AS WEIGHED) (INCLUDES ALL UNDRAINABLE FLUIDS AND FULL OIL)			
DRAINABLE UNUSABLE FUEL AT 6.0 POUNDS PER GALLON - (3 GALLONS)	18.0	46.0	0.83
BASIC EMPTY WEIGHT			

Figure 6-1. Airplane Weighing Form (Sheet 2 of 2)

3. Weighing:
   a. Weigh airplane in a closed hangar to avoid errors caused by air currents.
   b. With the airplane level and brakes released, record the weight shown on each scale. Deduct the tare, if any, from each reading.
4. Measuring:
   a. Obtain measurement A by measuring horizontally (along the airplane center line) from a line stretched between the main wheel centers to a plumb bob dropped from the firewall.
   b. Obtain measurement B by measuring horizontally and parallel to the airplane centerline, from center of nose wheel axle, left side, to a plumb bob dropped from the line between the main wheel centers. Repeat on right side and average the measurements.
5. Using weights from item 3 and measurements from item 4, the airplane weight and C.G. can be determined.
6. Basic Empty Weight may be determined by completing Figure 6-1.

WEIGHT AND BALANCE

The following information will enable you to operate your Cessna within the prescribed weight and center of gravity limitations. To calculate weight and balance, use the Sample Loading Problem, Loading Graph, and Center of Gravity Moment Envelope as follows:

Take the basic empty weight and moment from appropriate weight and balance records carried in your airplane, and enter them in the column titled YOUR AIRPLANE on the Sample Loading Problem.

NOTE

In addition to the basic empty weight and moment noted on these records, the C.G. arm (fuselage station) is also shown, but need not be used on the Sample Loading Problem. The moment which is shown must be divided by 1000 and this value used as the moment/1000 on the loading problem.

Use the Loading Graph to determine the moment/1000 for each additional item to be carried; then list these on the loading problem.

SAMPLE WEIGHT AND BALANCE RECORD

(CONTINUOUS HISTORY OF CHANGES IN STRUCTURE OR EQUIPMENT AFFECTING WEIGHT AND BALANCE)

AIRPLANE MODEL				SERIAL NO.				PAGE NUMBER			
DATE	ITEM NO.		DESCRIPTION OF ARTICLE OR MODIFICATION	WEIGHT CHANGE						RUNNING BASIC EMPTY WEIGHT	
				ADDED (+)			REMOVED (-)				
	IN	OUT		WT. (LB.)	ARM (IN.)	MOMENT /1000	WT. (LB.)	ARM (IN.)	MOMENT /1000	WT. (LB.)	MOMENT /1000
			AS DELIVERED								

Figure 6-2. Sample Weight and Balance Record

NOTE

Loading Graph information for the pilot, passengers and baggage is based on seats positioned for average occupants and baggage loaded in the center of the baggage areas as shown on the Loading Arrangements diagram. For loadings which may differ from these, the Sample Loading Problem lists fuselage stations for these items to indicate their forward and aft C.G. range limitations (seat travel and baggage area limitation). Additional moment calculations, based on the actual weight and C.G. arm (fuselage station) of the item being loaded, must be made if the position of the load is different from that shown on the Loading Graph.

Total the weights and moments/1000 and plot these values on the Center of Gravity Moment Envelope to determine whether the point falls within the envelope, and if the loading is acceptable.

BAGGAGE TIE-DOWN

A nylon baggage net having tie-down straps is provided as standard equipment to secure baggage on the cabin floor aft of the rear seat (baggage area 1) and in the aft baggage area (baggage area 2). Six eyebolts serve as attaching points for the net. Two eyebolts for the forward tie-down straps are mounted on the cabin floor near each sidewall just forward of the baggage door approximately at station 90; two eyebolts are installed on the cabin floor slightly inboard of each sidewall approximately at station 107; and two eyebolts are located below the aft window near each sidewall approximately at station 107. A placard on the baggage door defines the weight limitations in the baggage areas.

When baggage area 1 is utilized for baggage only, the two forward floor mounted eyebolts and the two aft floor mounted eyebolts (or the two eyebolts below the aft window) may be used, depending on the height of the baggage. When baggage is carried in the baggage area 2 only, the aft floor mounted eyebolts and the eyebolts below the aft window should be used. When baggage is loaded in both areas, all six eyebolts should be utilized.

LOADING ARRANGEMENTS

* Pilot or passenger center of gravity on adjustable seats positioned for average occupant. Numbers in parentheses indicate forward and aft limits of occupant center of gravity range.

** Arm measured to the center of the areas shown.

NOTES:
1. The usable fuel C.G. arm for integral tanks is located at station 48.0.
2. The rear cabin wall (approximate station 108) or aft baggage wall (approximate station 142) can be used as convenient interior reference points for determining the location of baggage area fuselage stations.

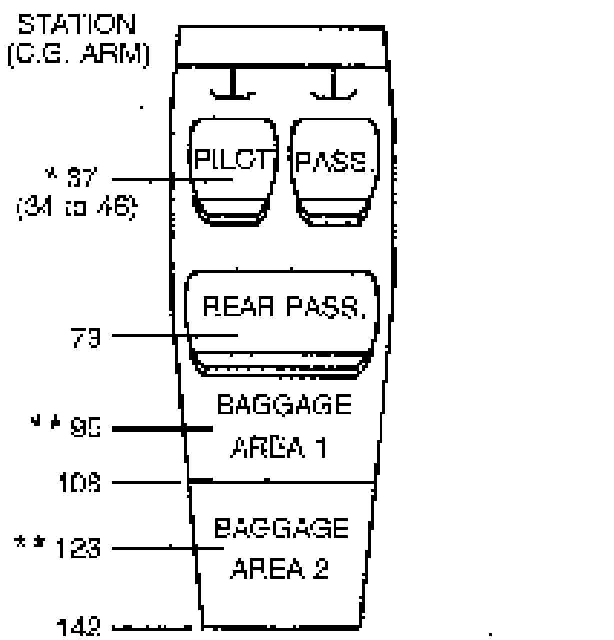
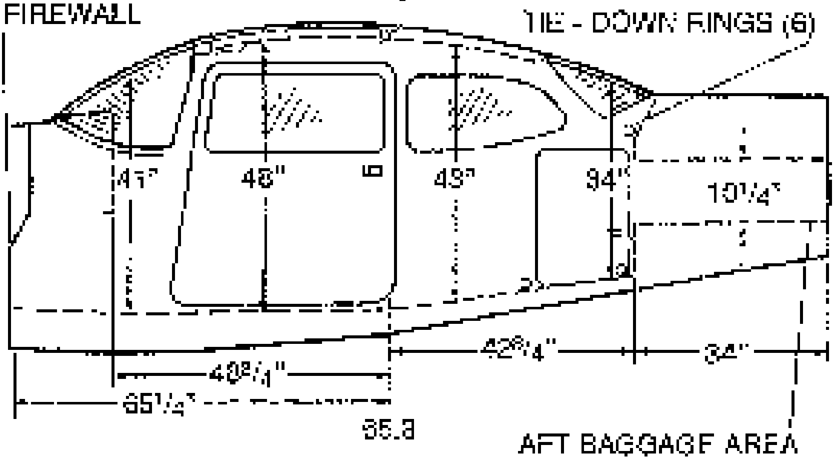


Figure 6-3. Loading Arrangements

CABIN HEIGHT MEASUREMENTS



DOOR OPENING DIMENSIONS

	WIDTH (TOP)	WIDTH (BOTTOM)	HEIGHT (FRONT)	HEIGHT (REAR)
CABIN DOORS	32^1/$_2$"	37"	40^1/$_2$"	39"
BAGGAGE DOOR	15^1/$_4$"	15^1/$_4$"	22"	21"

0585X1028

Figure 6-4. Internal Cabin Dimensions (Sheet 1 of 2)

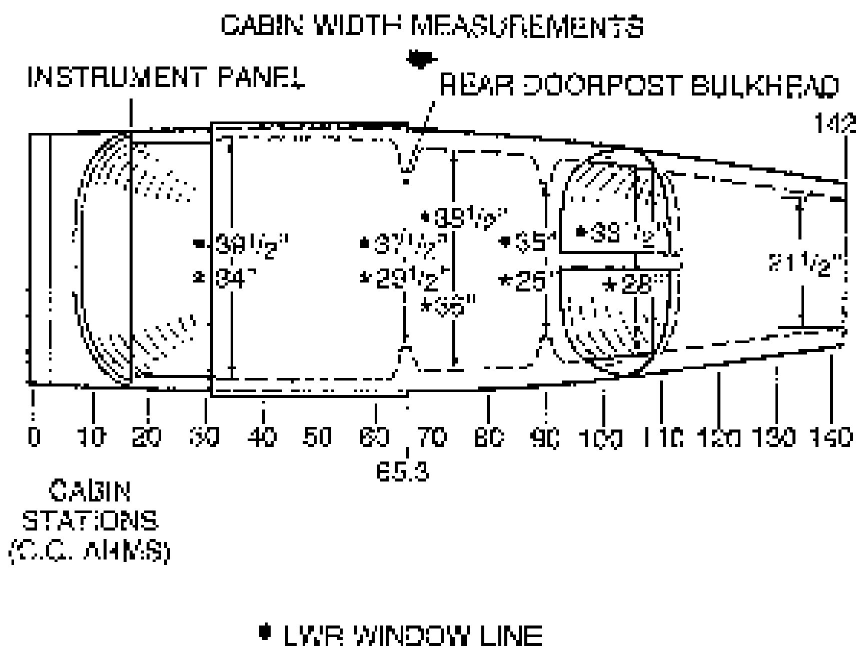


Figure 6-4. Internal Cabin Dimensions (Sheet 2 of 2)

ITEM DESCRIPTION	WEIGHT AND MOMENT TABULATION			
	SAMPLE AIRPLANE		YOUR AIRPLANE	
	Weight (lbs.)	Moment (Lb-ins. /1000)	Weight (lbs.)	Moment (Lb-ins. /1000)
1. Basic Empty Weight (Use the data pertaining to your airplane as it is presently equipped. Includes unusable fuel and full oil)	1642	62.6		
2. Usable Fuel (At 6 Lbs./Gal.)				
53 Gallons Maximum				
30 Gallons (Quantity used for example)	180	8.6		
3. Pilot and Front Passenger (Station 34 to 46)	340	12.6		
4. Rear Passengers	340	24.8		
5. *Baggage Area 1 (Station 82 to 108; 120 Lbs. Max.)	56	4.6		
6. *Baggage Area 2 (Station 108 to 142; 50 Lbs. Max.)				
7. **RAMP WEIGHT AND MOMENT** (add columns)	**2558**	**113.2**		
8. Fuel allowance for engine start, taxi and runup	-8.0	-0.4		
9. **TAKEOFF WEIGHT AND MOMENT** (Subtract Step 8 from Step 7)	**2550**	**112.8**		

10. Locate this point (2550 at 112.8) on the Center of Gravity Moment Envelope, and since this point falls within the envelope, the loading is acceptable.

* The maximum allowable combined weight capacity for baggage areas 1 and 2 is 120 pounds.

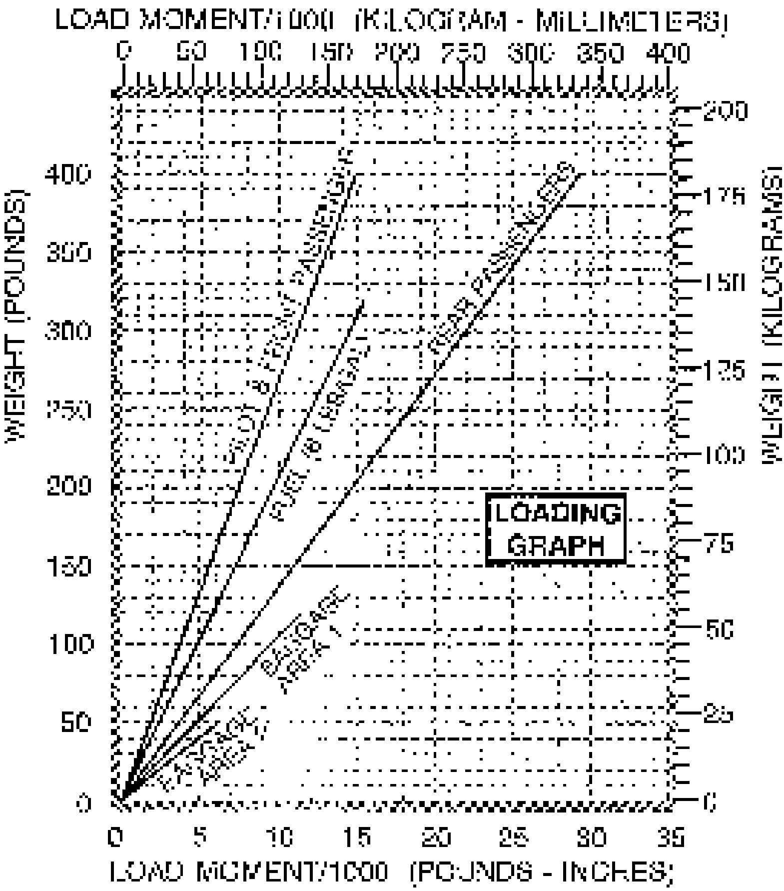
Figure 6-5. Sample Loading Problem (Sheet 1 of 2)

YOUR AIRPLANE		YOUR AIRPLANE		YOUR AIRPLANE	
Weight (lbs.)	Moment (Lb-ins. /1000)	Weight (lbs.)	Moment (Lb-ins. /1000)	Weight (lbs.)	Moment (Lb-ins. /1000)

NOTE

When several loading configurations are representative of your operations, it may be useful to fill out one or more of the above columns so specific loadings are available at a glance.

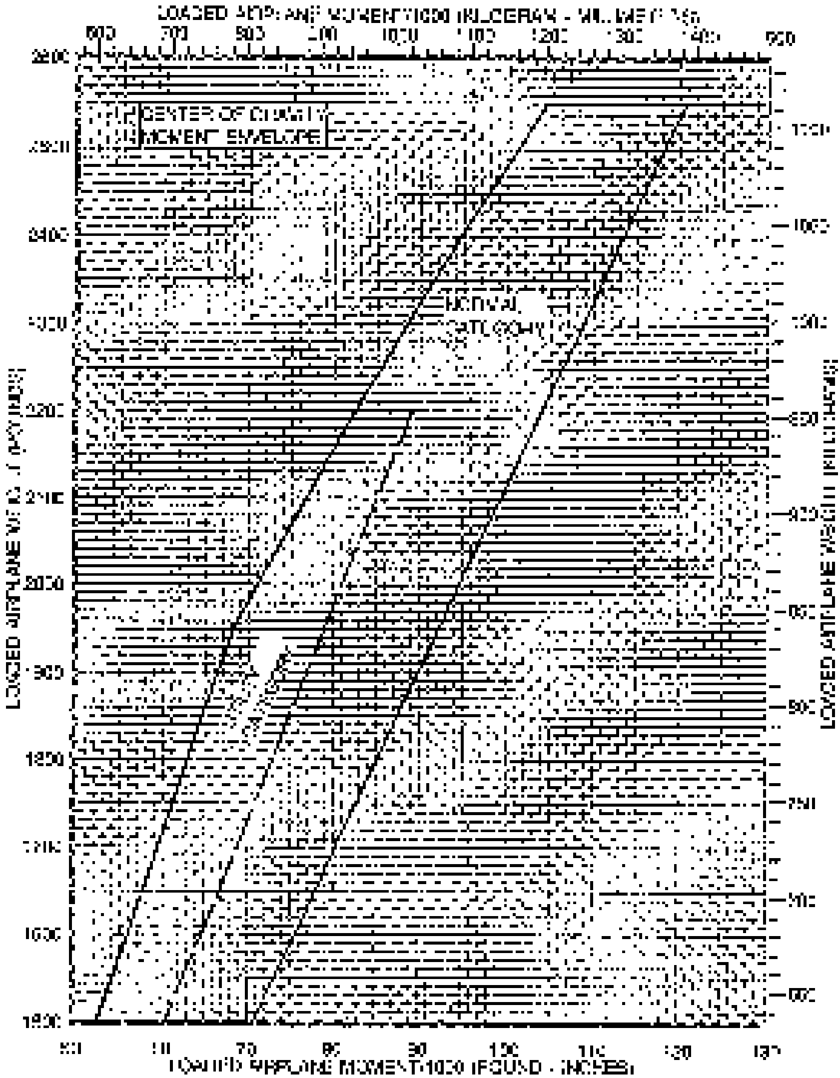
Figure 6-5. Sample Loading Problem (Sheet 2 of 2)



NOTE: LINE REPRESENTING ADJUSTABLE SEATS SHOWS THE PILOT OR PASSENGER CENTER OF GRAVITY ON ADJUSTABLE SEATS POSITIONED FOR AN AVERAGE OCCUPANT. REFER TO THE LOADING ARRANGEMENTS DIAGRAM FOR FORWARD AND AFT LIMITS OF OCCUPANT C.G. RANGE.

0585C1008

Figure 6-6. Loading Graph



0585C1007

Figure 6-7. Center of Gravity Moment Envelope

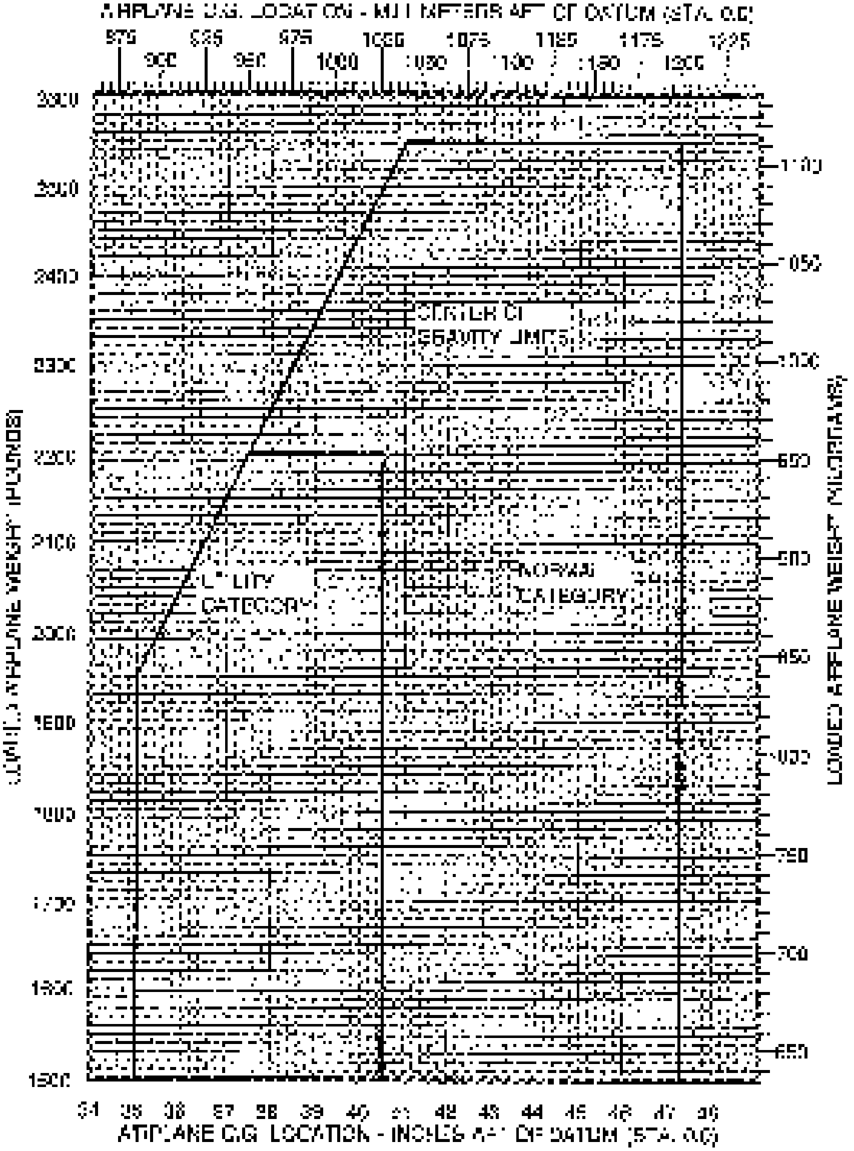


Figure 6-8. Center of Gravity Limits

COMPREHENSIVE EQUIPMENT LIST

The following figure (Figure 6-9) is a comprehensive list of all Cessna equipment which is available for the Model 172S airplane. This comprehensive equipment list provides the following information in column form:

In the **ITEM NO** column, each item is assigned a coded number. The first two digits of the code represent the assignment of the item within the Air Transport Association Specification 100 breakdown (11 for Paint and Placards, 24 for Electrical Power, 77 for Engine Indicating, etc...). These assignments also correspond to the Maintenance Manual chapter breakdown for the airplane. After the first two digits (and hyphen), items receive a unique sequence number (01, 02, 03, etc...). After the sequence number (and hyphen), a suffix letter is assigned to identify equipment as a required item, a standard item or an optional item. Suffix letters are as follows:

- -R = required items of equipment for FAA certification
- -S = standard equipment items
- -O = optional equipment items replacing required or standard items
- -A = optional equipment items which are in addition to required or standard items

In the **EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION** column, each item is assigned a descriptive name to help identify its function.

In the **REF DRAWING** column, a Cessna drawing number is provided which corresponds to the item.

NOTE

If additional equipment is to be installed, it must be done in accordance with the reference drawing, service bulletin or a separate FAA approval.

In the **WT LBS** and **ARM INS** columns, information is provided on the weight (in pounds) and arm (in inches) of the equipment item.

NOTES

Unless otherwise indicated, true values (not net change values) for the weight and arm are shown. Positive arms are distances aft of the airplane datum; negative arms are distances forward of the datum.

Asterisks (*) in the weight and arm column indicate complete assembly installations. Some major components of the assembly are listed on the lines immediately following. The sum of these major components does not necessarily equal the complete assembly installation.

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS.
	11 - PLACARDS AND MARKINGS			
11-01-R	PLACARD, OPERATIONAL LIMITATIONS	0505087-25	0.0	43.0
11-02-S	PAINT, OVERALL EXTERIOR	0504051	16.2*	90.4*
	- OVERALL WHITE	370-003	15.4	95.6
	- COLORED STRIPE DECALS	115916	0.8	155.5
	21 - AIR CONDITIONING			
21-01-S	REAR SEAT VENTS	0513575-20	1.7	60.0
21-02-S	CABIN HEATER SYSTEM (EXHAUST SHROUD ASSY, HEATER & HOSES)	0551100-1	2.5	-4.0
	22 - AUTO FLIGHT			
22-01-S	WING LEVELER PROVISIONS	2900006	2.2*	23.0*
	- CABLE ASSEMBLY	3924100-1	1.6	14.6
	- WING CABLE ASSEMBLY	3924110-1	0.6	43.0
22-02-A	SINGLE AXIS AUTOPILOT	3930004	7.2*	45.0*
	- AUTOPILOT COMPUTER/CONTROLLER	065-00176-2501	2.1	12.1
	- ROLL ACTUATOR, WITH MOUNT	3940400-1	2.6	58.5
	- CONFIGURATION MODULE	071-00073-0000	0.1	9.0
22-03-A	TWO AXIS AUTOPILOT	3930031	10.7*	104.4*
	- AUTOPILOT COMPUTER/CONTROLLER	065-00176-5201	2.1	12.1
	- ROLL ACTUATOR WITH MOUNT	3940400-1	2.6	58.5
	- PITCH ACTUATOR, WITH MOUNT	0501145-1	4.5	170.5
	- MISC STRUCTURE, WIRE & HARDWARE	3924125-1	3.0	60.0
	- PITCH TRIM OPTION, REQUIRES 22-03A	2900021-1	4.1*	139.5*
	PITCH TRIM ACTUATOR	0501153-1	2.1	174.5
	PITCH TRIM ELECTRICAL WIRING		1.6	97.5
	- ACCESS PANEL		1.4	170.0
	- MISCELLANEOUS STRUCTURE, WIRE & HARDWARE		3.0	60.0
22-04-A	ALTITUDE ALERT CONTROLLER REPLACES STANDARD 2-AXIS AUTOPILOT CONTROLLER & REQUIRES GPS ALT ALERT BE DISABLED - WT CHG	3910293	0.0	---
	23 - COMMUNICATIONS			
23-01-S	STATIC DISCHARGE WICKS (SET OF 10)	0501048-1	0.4	142.2
23-02-S	NAV/COM #1 INSTALLATION - NO G.S.	3930407-1	7.9*	32.7*
	- KX 155A DIGITAL NAVCOM	069-01032-0102	3.6	12.5
	- KI 208 INDICATOR	066-03056-0002	1.0	15.9
	- VHF COM ANTENNA		0.5	61.2
	- COM ANTENNA CABLE		0.4	36.5
	- OMNI NAV ANTENNA		0.5	253.4
	- OMNI ANTENNA CABLE		1.0	123.8
	- HARDWARE & CABLE ASSEMBLY	3921100-1	0.5*	9.7*

Figure 6-9. Equipment List Description (Sheet 1 of 8)

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS.
23-05-A	NAV/COM #2 INSTALLATION - WITH G.S.		6.8*	17.?*
	- KX 165A NAV/COM WITH GLIDESLOPE	069-01033-0101	4.0	12.5
	- KI 209A INDICATOR WITH GLIDESLOPE	066-03056-0005	1.2	13.9
	- NAV ANTENNA WITH G.S. COUPLER		0.2	14.0
	- COAX COM ANTENNA		0.0	61.2
	- HARDWARE & CABLE ASSEMBLY	3921101-1	0.8	9.0
23-06-A	AUDIO/INTERCOM/MARKER BEACON INSTL	3930407-1	2.6*	15.7*
	- KMA 26 AUDIO/RECEIVER PANEL	066-01156-0201	1.7	14.5
	HARDWARE & CABLE ASSEMBLY	3930409-?	0.9	30.0
23-08-S	BASIC AVIONICS EQUIPMENT BLACK BOXES		1.3*	27.4*
	- MARKER BEACON ANTENNA INSTL	3960188-?	0.5	131.0
	- FUSELAGE AND AUDIO WIRING	2521174-?	1.9	20.0
	- MICROPHONE INSTL - HAND HELD	2970134-8	0.2	18.0
	- AVN COOLING FAN INSTL	3930400-1	1.2	6.9
	- BASIC CIRCUIT BREAKER PANEL	3930417-2	0.1	16.0
	- AVN GROUND INSTL	3940357-1	0.?	15.0
	- MISCELLANEOUS HARDWARE		0.5	13.0
	24 - ELECTRICAL POWER			
24-01-R	ALTERNATOR, 28 VOLT 60 AMP	9910591-11	10.8	29.0
24-02-R	BATTERY, 24 VOLT, 12.75 A.H. MANIFOLD TYPE	C614002-0101	23.2	-5.0
24-03-R	POWER JUNCTION BOX (PRECISION AIRMOTIVE CORP. MC01-2A) INCLUDES:	MC01-2A	5.4*	2.5*
	ALTERNATOR CONTROL UNIT ACS10?	?7011?-?	0.2	3.0
	- MASTER CONTACTOR P/N X61-0007	?7010?	0.7	2.4
	- STARTER CONTACTOR P/N X61-0012	9930400-?	0.7	2.4
	- AMMETER TRANSDUCER P/N CS3200	9930417-2	0.1	2.0
	25 - EQUIPMENT/FURNISHINGS			
25-01-R	PILOT SEAT, CLOTH COVER	0514211-1	34.?	41.5
25-02-O	PILOT SEAT, LEATHER COVER	0514211-5	35.0	41.5
25-03-O	PILOT SEAT, LEATHER/VINYL COVER	0514211-8	34.?	41.5
25-04-O	PILOT SEAT, MILLENNIUM COVER	0514211-11		41.5
25-05-S	COPILOT SEAT, CLOTH COVER	0514211-1	34.2	41.5
25-06-O	COPILOT SEAT, LEATHER COVER	0514211-5	35.0	41.5
25-07-O	COPILOT SEAT, LEATHER/VINYL COVER	0514211-8	34.0	41.5
25-08-O	COPILOT SEAT, MILLENNIUM COVER	0514211-11		41.5
25-09-S	REAR SEAT, CLOTH COVER	0514219-1	45.3	75.5
25-10-O	REAR SEAT, LEATHER COVER	0514219-2	44.7	75.5
25-11-O	REAR SEAT, LEATHER/VINYL COVER	0514219-3	44.0	75.5
25-12-O	REAR SEAT, MILLENNIUM COVER	0514219-4		75.5
25-13-R	CREW RESTRAINT SYSTEM, INERTIA REEL	2000061-5,-6	5.2	54.0
25-14-O	CREW RESTRAINT SYSTEM, MANUAL ADJUST	2000061-5,-6	4.5	54.0

Figure 6-9. Equipment List Description (Sheet 2 of 8)

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS.
25-15-S	REAR SEAT RESTRAINT SYSTEM, INERTIA REEL	2000031-11,-15	5.2	90.0
25-16-O	REAR SEAT RESTRAINT SYSTEM, MANUAL ADJUST	2000031-11,-12	4.0	90.0
25-17-S	PADDED GLARESHIELD	0514230-1	1.2	21.0
25-18-S	SUN VISORS	0514166-2	1.1	32.5
25-19-S	SUN VISOR INSTL - MILLENNIUM	0519004-1		
25-20-S	BAGGAGE RESTRAINT NET	2015009-7	0.5	95.0
25-21-S	CARGO TIE DOWN RINGS	0515055-6	0.2	95.0
25-22-S	PILOT'S OPERATING CHECKLIST (STOWED IN MAP CASE)	0500835-1	0.3	14.3
25-23-S	PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK AND FAA APPROVED AIRPLANE FLIGHT MANUAL (STOWED IN PILOT'S SEAT BACK CASE)	[illegible]	1.2	50.0
25-24-S	FUEL SAMPLING CUP (STOWED)	S2107-1	0.1	14.3
25-25-S	TOW BAR, NOSE GEAR (STOWED)	0501019-1	1.7	124.0
25-26-R	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER	3840401-1	2.8*	101.0*
	- ELT TRANSMITTER	8003-11	1.8	113.3
	- ANTENNA AND CABLE ASSY	8003-45	0.5	122.0
	26 - FIRE PROTECTION			
26-01-S	FIRE EXTINGUISHER INSTALLATION	0501011-2	5.3*	46.8*
	- FIRE EXTINGUISHER	C421001-0201	4.0	44.0
	- MOUNTING CLAMP	1290010-1	0.8	42.8
	27 - FLIGHT CONTROLS			
27-01-S	RIGHT SEAT CONTROLS	0506003-1	3.1*	12.7*
	- COPILOT CONTROL WHEEL	0513578-4	2.0	26.0
	- COPILOT RUDDER & BRAKE PEDAL INSTL	0510402-18	1.1	6.8
27-02-S	PILOTS CONTROL WHEEL WITH MAP LIGHT, MIC SWITCH AND JACK	0513276-5	0.4	22.0
	28 - FUEL			
28-01-R	FUEL QUANTITY INDICATORS	S3281-2	0.4	16.5
28-02-R	AUXILIARY FUEL PUMP (UNDER FLOORBOARD)	5100-00-1	1.9	2.5
	31 - INDICATING/RECORDING SYSTEM			
31-01-S	DIGITAL ELECTRONIC CLOCK/OAT	M803B-AC-28V-3	0.7	16.5
31-02-S	HOUR RECORDER, "HOBBS TIME"	C664508-0103	0.1	5.1
31-03-R	ANNUNCIATOR	C661204-01	0.5	16.0
31-04-R	PNEUMATIC STALL WARNING SYSTEM	0523112-2	0.4	29.3

Figure 6-9. Equipment List Description (Sheet 5 of 8)

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS.
	32 - LANDING GEAR			
32-01-R	WHEEL BRAKE AND TIRE, 6.00 X 6 MAIN	0541200-09,-10	34.4*	57.8*
	- WHEEL ASSY, CLEVELAND (EACH)	C163001-0104	6.2	58.2
	- BRAKE ASSY, CLEVELAND (EACH)	C163030-0111	1.8	54.5
	- TIRE, 6-PLY, 6.00 X 6 BLACKWALL	C262003-0204	7.9	58.2
	- TUBE (EACH)	C262023-0102	1.3	58.2
32-02-R	WHEEL AND TIRE, 5.00 X 5 NOSE	0543062-17	9.2	-6.8*
	- WHEEL ASSY, CLEVELAND	1241156-12	3.5	-6.8
	- TIRE, 6-PLY, 5.00 X 5 BLACKWALL	C262003-0202	4.6	-6.8
	- TUBE	C262023-0101	1.4	-6.8
32-03-A	WHEEL FAIRINGS AND INSTALLATION	0541225-1	16.5*	46.1*
	NOSE WHEEL FAIRING	0543079-3	3.5	-3.5
	- MAIN WHEEL FAIRINGS (SET OF 2)	0541223-1, -2	10.1	61.1
	- BRAKE FAIRINGS (SET OF 2)	0541224-1, -2	1.0	55.9
	- MOUNTING PLATE (SET OF 2)	0541220-1, -2	0.5	59.5
32-04-O	PREMIUM TIRES, 6.00 X 6, 150 MPH RATING EXCHANGE WITH STANDARD TIRES (NET CHANGE)	C601188-1	4.1	47.1
	33 - LIGHTS			
33-01-S	MAP LIGHT IN CONTROL WHEEL (PART OF 27-20-S)	0570059	(0.2)	(21.5)
33-02-R	UNDER WING COURTESY LIGHTS (SET OF 2)	0521101-8	0.0	61.0
33-03-S	NAVIGATION LIGHT DETECTORS	1221201-3,-4	0.0	40.8
33-04-R	FLASHING BEACON	0506003-5	1.4	204.7
33-05-R	WING TIP STROBE LIGHT	0501027-8	3.4	43.3
33-06-S	LANDING AND TAXI LIGHT INSTL IN WING	0523029-7	2.4	28.7
	34 - NAVIGATION			
34-01-R	INDICATOR, AIRSPEED	S3325-5	0.6	16.2
34-02-S	ALTERNATE STATIC AIR SOURCE	0501017-2	0.2	15.5
34-03-R	SENSITIVE ALTIMETER	S3400-1	0.9	14.0
34-04-S	BLIND ALTITUDE ENCODER INSTL	3930133-1	0.9	11.0
34-05-R	COMPASS INSTL, MAGNETIC	0513262-3	0.5	14.0
34-06-S	GYRO, INSTALLATION, REQUIRES 37-01-S	0501135-1	5.0*	13.0*
	- DIRECTIONAL GYRO	52009-1	2.5	14.0
	- ATTITUDE GYRO	52025-1	2.1	14.0
	- HOSES AND MISC HARDWARE	0501135-1	1.5	10.0
34-07-O	GYRO INSTL, REQUIRES 37-01-S & USED WITH 22-02-A OR 22-03-A	0560000	6.5*	13.1*
	- ATTITUDE GYRO	S3326-1	2.2	14.0
	- DIRECTIONAL GYRO	S3330-2	2.2	14.0
	- HOSES & MISC HARDWARE	0560000	1.6	10.0

Figure 6-9. Equipment List Description (Sheet 4 of 6)

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS.
34-09-S	GYRO INSTL. REQUIRES 37-01-S & USED WITH 34-14-O	3600018	3.8*	11.0*
	- ATTITUDE GYRO	S3326-1	2.3	14.0
	- HOSES & MISC HARDWARE	3000018	1.5	10.0
34-06-S	TURN COORDINATOR INDICATOR	S3291-1	1.0	15.6
34-10-S	VERTICAL SPEED INDICATOR	S3327-1	0.6	15.7
34-11-A	ADF INSTALLATION	3360408-1	10.4*	26.8*
	- KR 87 ADF RECEIVER	066-01072-0014	3.2	11.4
	KI 227 ADF INDICATOR	066-03063-0000	0.7	13.5
	- ADF ANTENNA	3960187-1	4.2	39.3
	- ADF CABLE ASSEMBLY	3922103-1	2.0	29.0
34-12-A	GPS INSTALLATION	3950408-1	4.4*	15.3*
	- KING GPS RCVR, KLN 89	069-01140-1111	3.3	12.4
	- GPS ANTENNA	3930193-1	0.3	43.6
	- GPS CABLE ASSEMBLY		0.9	14.1
34-13-S	MODE C TRANSPONDER INSTL	3930404-1	4.1*	12.7*
	- KT 76C TRANSPONDER	066-01156-0101	2.4	13.5
	- TRANS CAL BLIND ENCODER	3930402-1	0.9	16.8
	TRANSPONDER ANTENNA	3930191-1	0.2	65.9
	- HARDWARE & CABLE ASSEMBLY	3922102-1	0.8	22.5
34-14-O	HORIZONTAL SITUATION INDICATOR INSTL - NET WT INCREASE, REQUIRES 37-01-S	3930016-1	15.6*	24.1*
	- HSI	066-03046-0001	3.4	12.4
	- GYRO SLAVING METER	071-01242-0005	0.6	15.8
	- FLUX DETECTOR INST.	3940284	0.7	52.6
	REMOTE DIR GYRO-SLAVED	3940282	8.1	112.6
	- NAV CONVERTER INSTL	3940268	1.6	117.0
	WIRING	3900010	6.0	69.7
	- STD GYRO INST. - REMOVED	0601136	13.6	8.5
	- GYRO INST. FOR HSI INSTALLED	0601171	11.0	1.5
	- REMOVE #1 NAV INDICATOR		-1.2	13.9
	37 - VACUUM			
37-01-S	DUAL PUMP ENGINE DRIVEN VACUUM SYSTEM	0601136	6.4*	-1.8*
	- AIRBORNE VACUUM PUMP	1B211CC	1.5	-6.5
	AIRBORNE VACUUM PUMP	B211CW	1.6	-8.6
	- COOLING SHROUD	1201598-1	0.1	-6.5
	- COOLING SHROUD	1201598-1	0.1	-3.8
	- FILTER INSTALLATION	1201075-2	0.3	5.2
	- COMBINATION VACUUM INDICATOR/AMMETER	S3280-1	0.3	14.0
	- VACUUM RELIEF VALVE	2H3-48	0.3	4.7
	- MANIFOLD	1H5-25	0.5	-3.2
37-02-S	COMBINATION VACUUM GAGE/AMMETER	S3280-1	0.3	14.9

Figure 6-9. Equipment List Description (Sheet 5 of 8)

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS.
	53 - FUSELAGE			
53-01-S	REFUELING STEPS AND HANDLE INSTL	0513415-8	1.7	16.8
	56 - WINDOWS			
56-01-S	WINDOW - RIGHT HAND DOOR, OPENABLE	0517001-40	5.9	48.5
56-02-S	WINDOW - LEFT HAND DOOR, OPENABLE	0517001-39	5.9	40.5
	57 - WINGS			
57-01-O	HEAVY DUTY FLAPS (WT SHOWN NET CHG)	0501150	- - -	- - -
	- TWO (2) FLAPS EXCHANGED	0523903	2.2	69.2
	- ONE (1) FLAP EXCHANGED	0523903	1.1	69.2
	61 - PROPELLER			
61-01-R	FIXED PITCH PROPELLER INSTALLATION	0550320-11	38.3	-38.2
	- MCCAULEY 76 INCH PROPELLER	1A170E/JHA7660	25.0	-38.4
	- MCCAULEY 2.5 INCH PROPELLER SPACER	C5464	8.3	-36.5
61-02-R	SPINNER INSTALLATION, PROPELLER	0550320-11	1.8	-41.0
	- SPINNER DOME ASSEMBLY	0550236-14	1.0	-42.3
	FWD SPINNER BULKHEAD	0552231-1	0.6	-40.3
	AFT SPINNER BULKHEAD	0550321-10	0.4	-37.3
61-03-O	POLISHED SPINNER - MILLENNIUM INSTL (NET CHANGE)	0550371-1	0.0	-41.0
	71 - POWERPLANT			
71-01-R	AIR INTAKE FILTER, DONALDSON	P198281	1.0	-27.0
71-02-S	WINTERIZATION KIT INSTALLATION (STOWED) (INSTALLED ARM SHOWN)	0501128-5	0.8	-29.0
	- BREATHER TUBE INSULATION	0552011	0.4	-16.8
	- COWL INLET COVERS (INSTALLED)	0552329-3,4	0.3	-32.0
	- COWL INLET COVERS (STOWED)	0552329-3,4	0.3	95.0
71-03-R	ENGINE - LYCOMING IO-360-L2A	0550305-1	297.8	-18.8
	- FUEL INJECTOR, RSA 5AD1		7.6	-18.0
	- MAGNETOS & HARNESS, SLICK 4371 (SET OF 2)		9.0	-6.0
	OIL FILTER AND ADAPTER (CHAMPION)	CH48110	2.5	-18.5
	- SPARK PLUGS (CHAMPION)		1.5	13.9
	- STARTER, LAMAR 31-B22257		17.2	-29.9
71-04-O	MILLENNIUM ENGINE INSTL LYCOMING IO-360-L2A (NET CHANGE)	0550372-1	0.0	-19.6

Figure 6-2. Equipment List Description (Sheet 5 of 8)

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS
	73 - ENGINE FUEL & CONTROL			
73-01-S	EGT/FUEL FLOW INDICATOR	S3277-4	0.6	7.8
	77 - ENGINE INDICATING			
77-01-R	RECORDING TACHOMETER INSTALLATION	S3325-5	1.0	12.1
	78 - EXHAUST			
78-01-R	EXHAUST SYSTEM INSTALLATION	9954100-1	10.3*	-20.0*
	- MUFFLER & TAILPIPE WELD ASSY	9954100-2	4.3	-22.7
	- SHROUD ASSEMBLY - MUFFLER HEATER	9954100-3	0.3	-22.7
	79 - OIL			
79-01-R	OIL COOLER INSTALLATION	0550365-1	2.3*	-11.0*
	- OIL COOLER, STEWART WARNER	8000774	2.3	-11.0
79-02-R	OIL PRESSURE & TEMPERATURE INDICATOR	S3326-?	0.4	16.6
	90 - MISCELLANEOUS			
90-01-A	MILLENNIUM EQUIPMENT OPTION	0501800-1, -2	10.5	39.1
	- 11-04-O MILLENNIUM EXTERIOR STYLING	0504065-1, -2	0.0	95.4
	25-09-O SUNVISOR INSTALLATION MILLENNIUM	0518009-1		
	- MILLENNIUM UPHOLSTERY OPTION	0515005-1		
	- 25-30-O PILOT'S LEATHER/VINYL SEATS	0515005-1		
	SIDEWALL INSERT MILLENNIUM UPHOLSTERY	0518006-1		
	- MILLENNIUM FLOOR MATS (SET OF 2)	0519006-1	2.1	15.0
	- STORAGE CONSOLE INSTALLATION	0519006-2	2.3	27.0
	- 32-04-O PREMIUM TIRE INSTL	0501156-1	4.1	47.3
	- 61-03-O POLISHED SPINNER INSTL	0550371-1	0.0	-31.0*
	- 73-02-O ENGINE INSTL	0550379-1	0.0	-18.6
	POLISHED FASTENER INSTL	0552230-1	0.0	
	MILLENNIUM CONTROL WHEEL PAD	1219012-1	0.0	
	99 - AVIONICS PACKAGES			
99-01-S	STANDARD AVIONICS PACKAGE	3930003-1	25.0	22.2
	- 22-01-S -WING LEVELER PROVISIONS	3930008	2.3	35.0
	23-05-S -BASIC AVIONICS INST	3930009-1	11.5	27.4
	23-04-S -MARKER BEACON/INTERCOM INSTL	3930407-1	2.0	13.7
	- 23-02-S -NAV/COM #1 INSTALLATION	3930407-1	7.8	52.7
	- 34-11-S MODE C TRANSPONDER INSTL	3930407-1	4.1	15.7

Figure 6-8. Equipment List Description (Sheet 7 of 8)

ITEM NO	EQUIPMENT LIST DESCRIPTION	REF DRAWING	WT LBS	ARM INS.
9[illegible]-04-A	NAV I AVIONICS PKG (NET CHANGE OVER STANDARD AVIONICS PKG)	3930004-1	21.8*	21.5*
	- 34-10-A GPS INSTALLATION	3930408-1	4.4	15.[illegible]
	- 23-03-A NAV/COM INSTL WITH G/S	3930408-1	6.5	17.[illegible]
	- 34-05-A ADF INSTALLATION	3930408-1	10.[illegible]	25.8
9[illegible]-0[illegible]-A	NAV II AVIONICS PKG (NET CHANGE OVER STANDARD AVIONICS PKG)	3930005-1	28.8*	27.1*
	- 99-02-A NAV I AVN PKG	3930004-1	21.2	21.5
	- 22-02-A SINGLE AXIS AUTOPILOT	3930003-1	7.2	43.6
98-0[illegible]-A	NAV II WITH HSI AVIONICS PKG (NET CHANGE OVER STANDARD AVIONICS PKG)	3930016	43.8*	47.0*
	- 99-02-A NAV I AVN PKG	3930004	21.[illegible]	[illegible].5
	- 22-02-A SINGLE AXIS AUTOPILOT	3930003-1	7.2	43.6
	- 34-12-O HSI GYRO INSTL	3930015-1	15.2	94.1
98-05-A	NAV III WITH HSI AVIONICS PKG (NET CHANGE OVER STANDARD AVIONICS PKG)	3930018	56.3*	57.[illegible]
	- 99-02-A NAV I AVN PKG	3930004	21.0	2[illegible].5
	- 22-02-A 2 AXIS AUTOPILOT	3930002	19.7	104.4
	- 34-12-O HSI GYRO INSTL	3930015	15.2	94.1
98-06-A	NAV III WITHOUT HSI AVIONICS PKG (NET CHANGE OVER STANDARD AVIONICS PKG)	3930021	41.0*	51.[illegible]
	- 99-02-A NAV I AVN PKG	3930004-1	21.0	21.8
	- 22-03-A 2 AXIS AUTOPILOT	3930002	19.7	104.4

Figure 6-9. Equipment List Description (Sheet 8 of 8)

SECTION 7
AIRPLANE & SYSTEMS DESCRIPTION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

INTRODUCTION

This section provides description and operation of the airplane and its systems. Some equipment described herein is optional and may not be installed in the airplane. Refer to the Supplements, Section 9, for details of other optional systems and equipment.

AIRFRAME

The airplane is an all metal, four-place, high wing, single engine airplane equipped with tricycle landing gear and is designed for general utility and training purposes.

The construction of the fuselage is a conventional formed sheet metal bulkhead, stringer, and skin design referred to as semimonocoque. Major items of structure are the front and rear carry through spars to which the wings are attached, a bulkhead and forgings for main landing gear attachment at the base of the rear door posts, and a bulkhead with attach fittings at the base of the forward door posts for the lower attachment of the wing struts. Four engine mount stringers are also attached to the forward door posts and extend forward to the firewall.

The externally braced wings, containing integral fuel tanks, are constructed of a front and rear spar with formed sheet metal ribs, doublers, and stringers. The entire structure is covered with aluminum skin. The front spars are equipped with wing-to-fuselage and wing-to-strut attach fittings. The aft spars are equipped with wing-to-fuselage attach fittings, and are partial span spars. Conventional hinged ailerons and single slot type flaps are attached to the trailing edge of the wings. The ailerons are constructed of a forward spar containing balance weights, formed sheet metal ribs and "V" type corrugated aluminum skin joined together at the trailing edge. The flaps are constructed basically the same as the ailerons, with the exception of the balance weights and the addition of a formed sheet metal leading edge section.

The empennage (tail assembly) consists of a conventional vertical stabilizer, rudder, horizontal stabilizer, and elevator. The vertical stabilizer consists of a spar, formed sheet metal ribs and reinforcements, a wraparound skin panel, formed leading edge skin and a dorsal. The rudder is constructed of a formed leading edge skin and spar with attached hinge brackets and ribs, a center spar, a wrap around skin, and a ground adjustable trim tab at the base of the trailing edge. The top of the rudder incorporates a leading edge extension which contains a balance weight.

The horizontal stabilizer is constructed of a forward and aft spar, ribs and stiffeners, center, left, and right wrap around skin panels, and formed leading edge skins. The horizontal stabilizer also contains the elevator trim tab actuator.

Construction of the elevator consists of formed leading edge skins, a forward spar, aft channel, ribs, torque tube and bellcrank, left upper and lower "V" type corrugated skins, and right upper and lower "V" type corrugated skins incorporating a trailing edge cutout for the trim tab. The elevator tip leading edge extensions incorporate balance weights. The elevator trim tab consists of a spar, rib, and upper and lower "V" type corrugated skins.

FLIGHT CONTROLS

The airplane's flight control system (Refer to Figure 7-1) consists of conventional aileron, rudder, and elevator control surfaces. The control surfaces are manually operated through cables and mechanical linkage using a control wheel for the ailerons and elevator, and rudder/brake pedals for the rudder.

TRIM SYSTEM

A manually operated elevator trim system is provided (Refer to Figure 7-1). Elevator trimming is accomplished through the elevator trim tab by utilizing the vertically mounted trim control wheel in the cockpit. Forward rotation of the trim wheel will trim nose down; conversely, aft rotation will trim nose up.

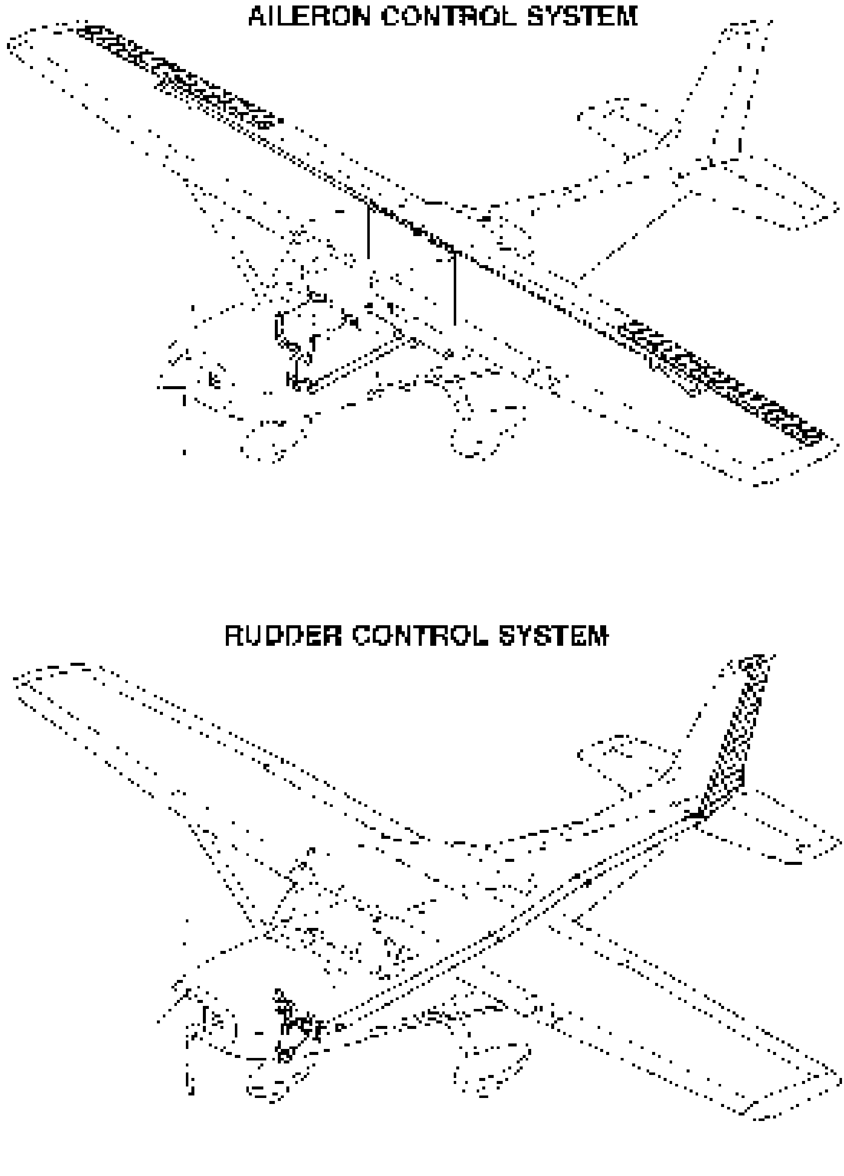
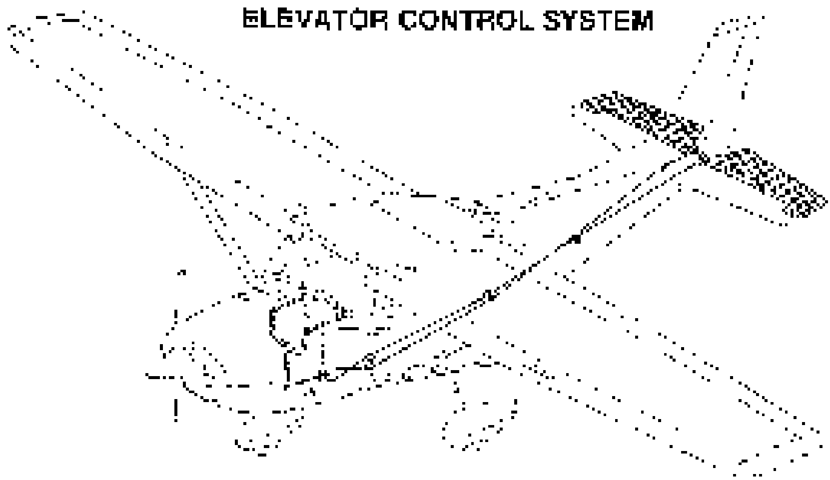


Figure 7-1. Flight Control and Trim Systems (Sheet 1 of 2)



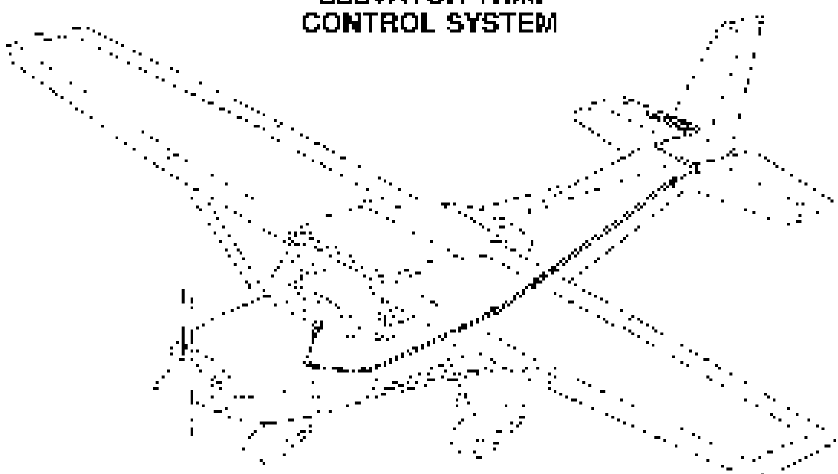


Figure 7-1. Flight Control and Trim Systems (Sheet 2 of 2)

INSTRUMENT PANEL

The instrument panel (Refer to Figure 7-2) is of all-metal construction, and is designed in segments to allow related groups of instruments, switches and controls to be removed without removing the entire panel. For specific details concerning the instruments, switches, circuit breakers, and controls on the instrument panel, refer to related topics in this section.

PILOT SIDE PANEL LAYOUT

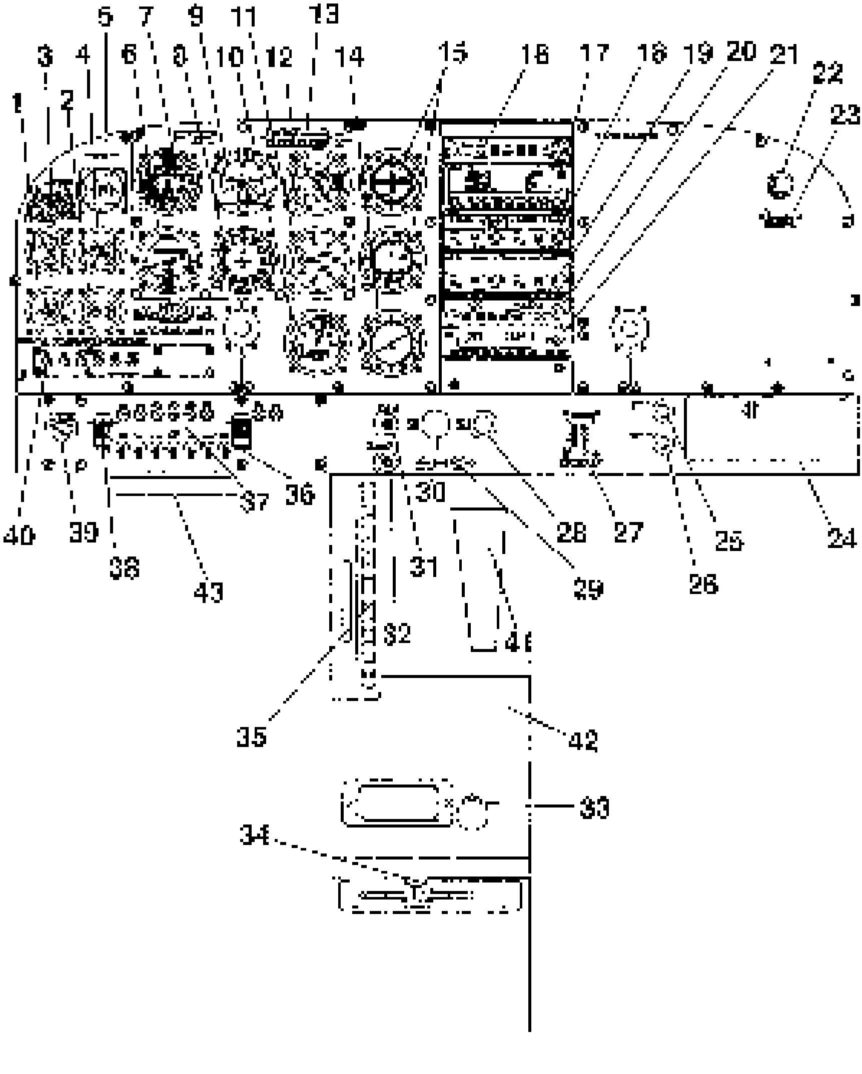
Flight instruments are contained in a single panel located in front of the pilot. These instruments are designed around the basic "T" configuration. The gyros are located immediately in front of the pilot, and arranged vertically over the control column. The airspeed indicator and altimeter are located to the left and right of the gyros, respectively. The remainder of the flight instruments are clustered around the basic "T". An annunciator panel is located above the altimeter and provides caution and warning messages for fuel quantity, oil pressure, low vacuum and low voltage situations.

To the right of the flight instruments is a sub panel which contains engine tachometer and various navigational heading instruments. To the left of the flight instruments is a sub panel which contains a left/right fuel quantity indicator, an oil temperature/oil pressure indicator, a vacuum gage/ammeter an EGT/fuel flow indicator, a digital clock/O.A.T. indicator and the avionics circuit breaker panel.

Below the engine and flight instruments are circuit breakers and switches for the airplane systems and equipment. Master, Avionics Master and Ignition switches are also located in this area of the panel. The parking brake control is positioned below the switch and circuit breaker panel.

CENTER PANEL LAYOUT

The center panel contains various avionics equipment arranged in a vertical rack. This arrangement allows each component to be removed without having to access the backside of the panel. Below the panel are the throttle, mixture, alternate static air and lighting controls.



0585C1040

Figure 7-2. Instrument Panel (Sheet 1 of 2)

1. Oil Temperature and Oil Pressure Indicator
2. Vacuum Gage and Ammeter
3. Fuel Quantity Indicator
4. EGT/Fuel Flow Indicator
5. Digital Clock / O.A.T. Indicator
6. Turn Coordinator
7. Airspeed Indicator
8. Directional Gyro
9. Attitude Indicator
10. Tachometer
11. Vertical Speed Indicator
12. Altimeter
13. Annunciator Panel
14. ADF Bearing Indicator
15. Course Deviation and Glide Slope Indicators
16. Audio Control Panel
17. GPS Receiver
18. Nav/Com Radio #1
19. Nav/Com Radio #2
20. ADF Receiver
21. Transponder
22. ELT Remote Test Button
23. Hour Meter
24. Glove Box
25. Cabin Heat Control
26. Cabin Air Control
27. Flap Switch and Position Indicator
28. Mixture Control
29. Alternate Static Air Control
30. Throttle Control
31. Radio and Panel Dimming Control
32. Glareshield and Pedestal Dimming Control
33. Fuel Shutoff Valve Control
34. Fuel Selector
35. Elevator Trim Control and Position Indicator
36. Avionics Master Switch
37. Circuit Breakers and Switch/Breakers
38. Master Switch
39. Ignition Switch
40. Avionics Circuit Breaker Panel
41. Hand Held Microphone
42. 12 VDC Power Port (Location may vary)
43. Parking Brake

Figure 7-2. Instrument Panel (Sheet 2)

RH SIDE PANEL LAYOUT

The RH panel contains the hour meter, ELT switch, and room for expansion of indicators and other avionics equipment. Below this sub panel are the glove box, cabin heat and cabin air controls, and wing flap switch.

CENTER PEDESTAL LAYOUT

The center pedestal, located below the center panel, contains the elevator trim control wheel, position indicator, handheld microphone bracket and fuel shutoff valve control. The fuel selector valve handle is located at the base of the pedestal.

GROUND CONTROL

Effective ground control while taxiing is accomplished through nose wheel steering by using the rudder pedals; left rudder pedal to steer left and right rudder pedal to steer right. When a rudder pedal is depressed, a spring loaded steering bungee (which is connected to the nose gear and to the rudder bars) will turn the nose wheel through an arc of approximately 10° each side of center. By applying either left or right brake, the degree of turn may be increased up to 30° each side of center.

Moving the airplane by hand is most easily accomplished by attaching a tow bar to the nose gear strut. If a tow bar is not available, or pushing is required, use the wing struts as push points. Do not use the vertical or horizontal surfaces to move the airplane. If the airplane is to be towed by vehicle, never turn the nose wheel more than 30° either side of center or structural damage to the nose gear could result.

The minimum turning radius of the airplane, using differential braking and nose wheel steering during taxi, is approximately 27 feet. To obtain a minimum radius turn during ground handling, the airplane may be rotated around either main landing gear by pressing down on a tailcone bulkhead just forward of the horizontal stabilizer to raise the nose wheel off the ground. Care should be exercised to ensure that pressure is exerted only on the bulkhead area and not on skin between the bulkheads. Pressing down on the horizontal stabilizer is not recommended.

WING FLAP SYSTEM

The single-slot type wing flaps (Refer to Figure 7-3), are extended or retracted by positioning the wing flap switch lever on the instrument panel to the desired flap deflection position. The switch lever is moved up or down in a slotted panel that provides mechanical stops at the 10°, 20° and 30° positions. To change flap setting, the flap lever is moved to the right to clear mechanical stops at the 10° and 20° positions. A scale and pointer to the left of the flap switch indicates flap travel in degrees. The wing flap system circuit is protected by a 10-ampere circuit breaker, labeled FLAP, on the left side of the control panel.

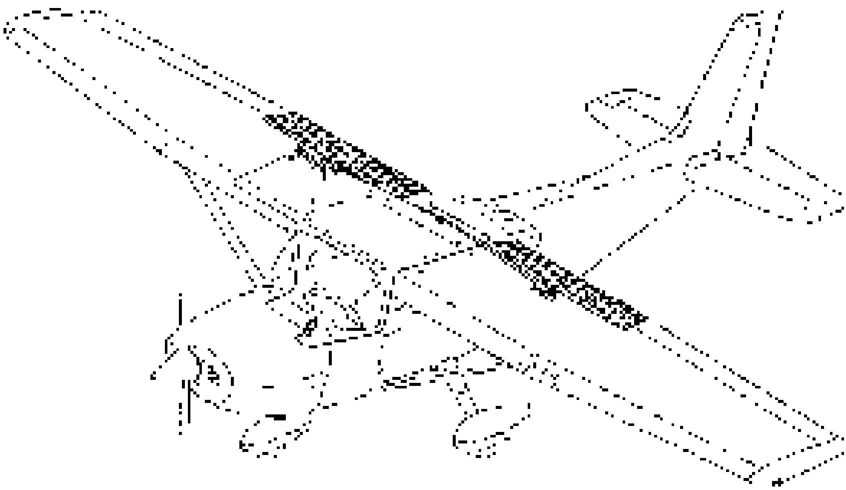


Figure 7-3. Wing Flap System

LANDING GEAR SYSTEM

The landing gear is of the tricycle type, with a steerable nose wheel and two main wheels. Wheel fairings are standard equipment for both the main and nose wheels. Shock absorption is provided by the tubular spring-steel main landing gear struts and the air/oil nose gear shock strut. Each main gear wheel is equipped with a hydraulically actuated disc-type brake on the inboard side of each wheel.

BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT

The baggage compartment consists of two areas, one extending from behind the rear passengers seat to the aft cabin bulkhead, and an additional area aft of the bulkhead. Access to both baggage areas is gained through a lockable baggage door on the left side of the airplane, or from within the airplane cabin. A baggage net with tiedown straps is provided for securing baggage and is attached by tying the straps to tiedown rings provided in the airplane. For baggage area and door dimensions, refer to Section 6.

SEATS

The seating arrangement consists of two vertically adjusting crew seats for the pilot and front seat passenger, and a single bench seat with adjustable back for rear seat passengers.

Seats used for the pilot and front seat passenger are adjustable fore and aft, and up and down. Additionally, the angle of the seat back is infinitely adjustable.

Fore and aft adjustment is made using the handle located below the center of the seat frame. To position the seat, lift the handle, slide the seat into position, release the handle and check that the seat is locked in place. To adjust the height of the seat, rotate the large crank under the right hand corner of the seat until a comfortable height is obtained. To adjust the seat back angle, pull up on the release button, located in the center front of seat, just under the seat bottom, position the seat back to the desired angle, and release the button. When the seat is not occupied, the seat back will automatically fold forward whenever the release button is pulled up.

The rear passengers' seat consists of a fixed, one piece seat bottom and a three-position, reclining back. The reclining back is adjusted by a lever located below the center of the seat frame. To adjust the seat back, raise the lever, position the seat back to the desired angle, release the lever and check that the back is locked in place.

Headrests are installed on both the front and rear seats. To adjust the headrest, apply enough pressure to it to raise or lower it to the desired level.

INTEGRATED SEAT BELT/SHOULDER HARNESS

All seat positions are equipped with integrated seat belts/shoulder harness assemblies (Refer to Figure 7-4). The design incorporates an overhead inertia reel for the shoulder portion, and a retractor assembly for the lap portion of the belt. This design allows for complete freedom of movement of the upper torso area while providing restraint in the lap belt area. In the event of a sudden deceleration, reels lock up to provide positive restraint for the user.

In the front seats, the inertia reels are located on the centerline of the upper cabin. In the rear seats, the inertia reels are located outboard of each passenger in the upper cabin.

To use the integrated seat belt/shoulder harness, grasp the link with one hand, and, in a single motion, extend the assembly and insert into the buckle. Positive locking has occurred when a distinctive "snap" sound is heard.

Proper locking of the lap belt can be verified by ensuring that the belts are allowed to retract into the retractors and the lap belt is snug and low on the waist as worn normally during flight. No more than one additional inch of belt should be able to be pulled out of the retractor once the lap belt is in place on the occupant. If more than one additional inch of belt can be pulled out of the retractor, the occupant is too small for the installed restraint system and the aircraft should not be occupied until the occupant is properly restrained.

Removal is accomplished by lifting the release mechanism on the buckle or by pressing the release button on the buckle and pulling out and up on the harness. Spring tension on the inertia reel will automatically stow the harness.

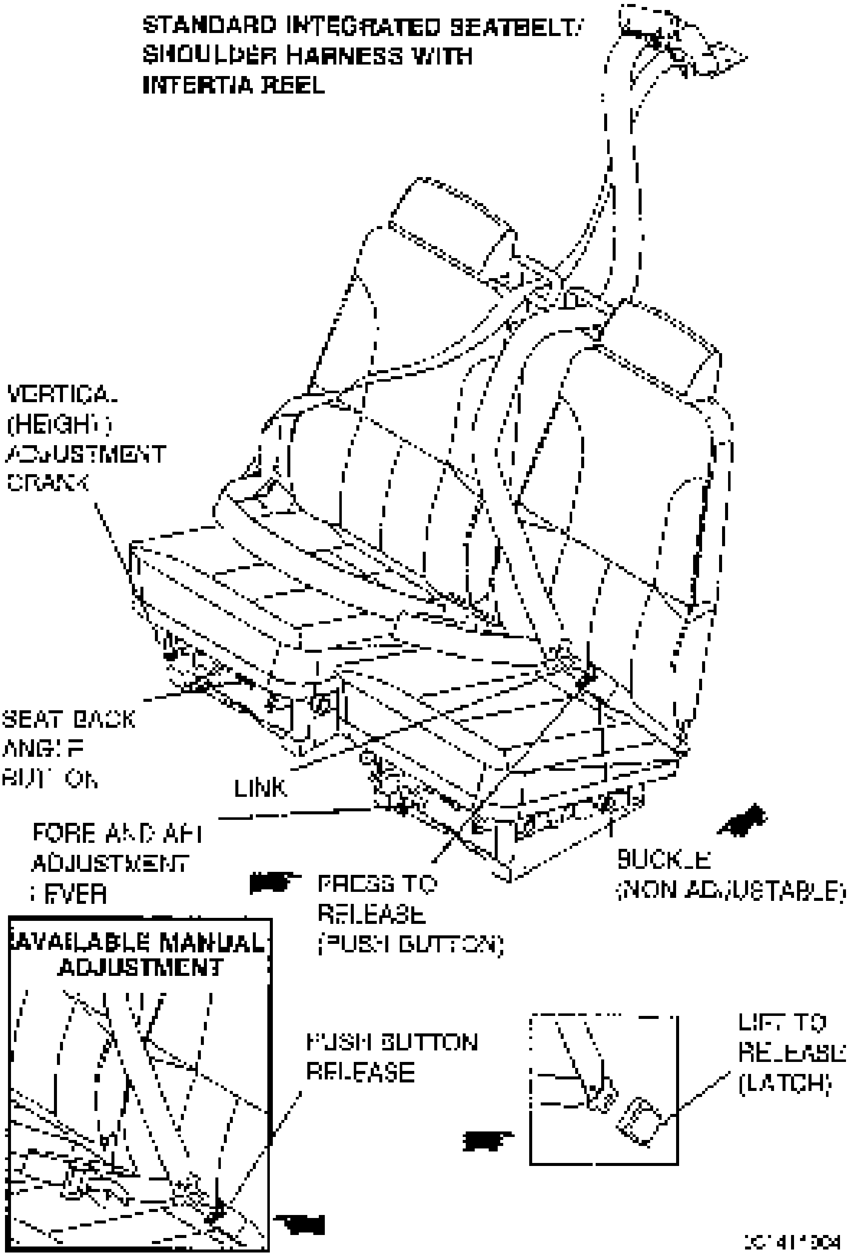


Figure 7-4. Crew Seats, Seat Belts and Shoulder Harnesses

A manually adjustable seat belt/shoulder harness assembly is available for all seats.

To use the manually adjustable seat belt/shoulder harness, fasten and adjust the seat belt/shoulder harness first. Lengthen the seat belt as required by pulling on the release strap on the belt. Snap the connecting link firmly into the buckle, then adjust to length. A properly adjusted harness will permit the occupant to lean forward enough to sit erect, but prevent excessive forward movement and contact with objects during sudden deceleration. Also, the pilot must have the freedom to reach all controls easily.

Disconnecting the manually adjustable seat belt/shoulder harness is accomplished by pushing the button on the buckle to release the connecting link.

ENTRANCE DOORS AND CABIN WINDOWS

Entry to, and exit from the airplane is accomplished through either of two entry doors, one on each side of the cabin at the front seat positions (refer to Section 6 for cabin and cabin door dimensions). The doors incorporate a recessed exterior door handle, a conventional interior door handle, a key operated door lock (left door only), a door stop mechanism, and openable windows in both the left and right doors.

NOTE

The door latch design on this model requires that the outside door handle on the pilot and front passenger doors be extended out whenever the doors are open. When closing the door, do not attempt to push the door handle in until the door is fully shut.

To open the doors from outside the airplane, utilize the recessed door handle near the aft edge of either door by grasping the forward edge of the handle and pulling outboard. To close or open the doors from inside the airplane, use the combination door handle and arm rest. The inside door handle has three positions and a placard at its base which reads OPEN, CLOSE, and LOCK. The handle is spring loaded to the CLOSE (up) position. When the door has been pulled shut and latched, lock it by rotating the door handle forward to the LOCK position (flush with the arm rest). When the handle is rotated to the LOCK position, an over center action will hold it in that position. Both cabin doors should be locked prior to flight, and should not be opened intentionally during flight.

NOTE

Accidental opening of a cabin door in flight due to improper closing does not constitute a need to land the airplane. The best procedure is to set up the airplane in a trimmed condition at approximately 75 KIAS, momentarily shove the door outward slightly, and forcefully close and lock the door.

Exit from the airplane is accomplished by rotating the door handle from the LOCK position, past the CLOSE position, aft to the OPEN position and pushing the door open. To lock the airplane, lock the right cabin door with the inside handle, close the left cabin door, and using the ignition key, lock the door.

The left and right cabin doors are equipped with openable windows which are held in the closed position by a detent equipped latch on the lower edge of the window frame. To open the windows, rotate the latch upward. Each window is equipped with a spring-loaded retaining arm which will help rotate the window outward, and hold it there. If required, either window may be opened at any speed up to 163 KIAS. The rear side windows and rear windows are of the fixed type and cannot be opened.

CONTROL LOCKS

A control lock is provided to lock the aileron and elevator control surfaces to prevent damage to these systems by wind buffeting while the airplane is parked. The lock consists of a shaped steel rod and flag. The flag identifies the control lock and cautions about its removal before starting the engine. To install the control lock, align the hole in the top of the pilot's control wheel shaft with the hole in the top of the shaft collar on the instrument panel and insert the rod into the aligned holes. Installation of the lock will secure the ailerons in a neutral position and the elevators in a slightly trailing edge down position. Proper installation of the lock will place the flag over the ignition switch. In areas where high or gusty winds occur, a control surface lock should be installed over the vertical stabilizer and rudder. The control lock and any other type of locking device should be removed prior to starting the engine.

ENGINE

The airplane is powered by a horizontally opposed, four cylinder, overhead valve, air-cooled, fuel-injected engine with a wet sump lubrication system. The engine is a Lycoming Model IO-360-L2A and is rated at 180 horsepower at 2700 RPM. Major accessories include a starter and belt driven alternator mounted on the front of the engine, and dual magnetos, dual vacuum pumps, and a full flow oil filter mounted on the rear of the engine accessory case.

ENGINE CONTROLS

Engine power is controlled by a throttle located on the switch and control panel above the center pedestal. The throttle is open in the full forward position and closed in the full aft position. A friction lock, which is a round knurled knob, is located at the base of the throttle and is operated by rotating the lock clockwise to increase friction or counterclockwise to decrease it.

The mixture control, mounted adjacent to the throttle control, is a red knob with raised points around the circumference and is equipped with a lock button in the end of the knob. The rich position is full forward, and full aft is the idle cutoff position. For small adjustments, the control may be moved forward by rotating the knob clockwise, and aft by rotating the knob counterclockwise. For rapid or large adjustments, the knob may be moved forward or aft by depressing the lock button in the end of the control, and then positioning the control as desired.

ENGINE INSTRUMENTS

Engine operation is monitored by the following instruments: oil pressure/oil temperature indicator, tachometer and exhaust gas temperature (EGT) indicator. In addition, the annunciator panel contains a red OIL PRESS annunciator which comes on when the oil pressure is low.

See Section 2, Limitations, for engine operating limitations and instrument markings.

Oil pressure signals are generated from an oil pressure line/transducer combination. An oil pressure line is routed from the upper front of the engine case to the rear engine baffle. At the baffle, the oil pressure line is connected to a transducer. This transducer produces an electrical signal which is translated into a pressure reading by the oil pressure gage located on the LH instrument panel.

In addition, a separate low oil pressure indication is provided through the panel annunciator. This annunciator is wired to a pressure switch located on the rear of the engine accessory case. When oil pressure is below 20 PSI, the switch grounds and completes the annunciator circuit, illuminating the red OIL PRESS light. When pressure exceeds 20 PSI, the ground is removed and the OIL PRESS annunciator goes out.

NOTE

The low oil pressure switch is also connected to the hour (Hobbs) meter. When pressure exceeds 20 PSI, a ground is supplied to the hour meter completing the hour meter circuit.

Oil temperature signals are generated from a resistance-type probe located in the engine accessory case. As oil temperature changes, the probe resistance changes. This resistance is translated into oil temperature readings on the cockpit indicator.

The engine driven mechanical tachometer is located on the instrument panel to the right of the pilot's control wheel. The instrument is calibrated in increments of 100 RPM and indicates both engine and propeller speed. An hour meter in the lower section of the dial records elapsed engine time in hours and tenths. Instrument markings include the normal operating range (green arc) from 1900 to 2400 RPM.

The exhaust gas temperature (EGT) indicator is located on the LH instrument panel as part of the EGT/Fuel Flow indicator. Since exhaust gas temperature varies with fuel-air ratios (mixture), density altitude, throttle position and RPM, the instrument is a useful aid in adjusting the mixture for best economy or performance. The EGT indicator allows the pilot to lean (reduce the proportion of fuel in the fuel-air mixture) to a known value using the maximum or 'peak' exhaust gas temperature as a reference. An index pointer which can be positioned manually is provided for the pilot to mark the location of the peak. **Never lean using EGT when operating at more than 75% power.**

The EGT system uses a thermocouple in the engine exhaust (tailpipe) to supply a voltage proportional to exhaust gas temperature. The EGT indicator responds to the voltage developed by the thermocouple. As the mixture is leaned (from full rich), the exhaust gas temperature will increase to a maximum value as the stoichiometric (most chemically efficient) fuel-air ratio is achieved and will decrease if the mixture continues to be leaned.

NEW ENGINE BREAK-IN AND OPERATION

The engine underwent a run-in at the factory and is ready for the full range of use. It is, however, suggested that cruising be accomplished at 75% power as much as practicable until a total of 50 hours has accumulated or oil consumption has stabilized. This will ensure proper seating of the piston rings.

ENGINE LUBRICATION SYSTEM

The engine utilizes a full-pressure, wet-sump type lubrication system with aviation-grade oil used as the lubricant. The capacity of the engine sump (located on the bottom of the engine) is eight quarts. Oil is drawn from the sump through an oil suction strainer screen into the engine-driven oil pump. From the pump, oil is routed to a bypass valve. If the oil is cold, the bypass valve allows the oil to bypass the oil cooler and go directly from the pump to the full flow oil filter. If the oil is hot, the bypass valve routes the oil out of the accessory housing and into a flexible hose leading to the oil cooler on the right, rear engine baffle. Pressure oil from the cooler returns to the accessory housing where it passes through the full flow oil filter. The filter oil then enters a pressure relief valve which regulates engine oil pressure by allowing excessive oil to return to the sump while the balance of the oil is circulated to various engine parts for lubrication. Residual oil is returned to the sump by gravity flow.

An oil filler cap/oil dipstick is located at the right rear of the engine. The filler cap/ dipstick is accessible through an access door on the top right side of the engine cowling. The engine should not be operated on less than five quarts of oil. For extended flight, fill to eight quarts (dipstick indication only). For engine oil grade and specifications, refer to Section 8 of this handbook.

IGNITION AND STARTER SYSTEM

Engine ignition is provided by two engine-driven magnetos, and two spark plugs in each cylinder. The right magneto fires the lower right and upper left spark plugs, and the left magneto fires the lower left and upper right spark plugs. Normal operation is conducted with both magnetos due to the more complete burning of the fuel/air mixture with dual ignition.

Ignition and starter operation is controlled by a rotary-type switch located on the left switch and control panel. The switch is labeled clockwise, OFF, R, L, BOTH, and START. The engine should be operated on both magnetos (BOTH position) except for magneto checks. The R and L positions are for checking purposes and emergency use only. When the switch is rotated to the spring loaded START position, (with the master switch in the ON position), the starter contactor is closed and the starter, now energized, will crank the engine. When the switch is released, it will automatically return to the BOTH position.

AIR INDUCTION SYSTEM

The engine air induction system receives ram air through an intake on the lower front portion of the engine cowling. The intake is covered by an air filter which removes dust and other foreign matter from the induction air. Airflow passing through the filter enters an air box. The air box has a spring-loaded alternate air door. If the air induction filter should become blocked, suction created by the engine will open the door and draw unfiltered air from inside the lower cowl area. An open alternate air door will result in an approximate 10% power loss at full throttle. After passing through the air box, induction air enters a fuel/air control unit under the engine, and is then ducted to the engine cylinders through intake manifold tubes.

EXHAUST SYSTEM

Exhaust gas from each cylinder passes through riser assemblies to a muffler and tailpipe. Outside air is pulled in around shrouds which are constructed around the outside of the muffler to form heating chambers which supply heat to the cabin.

COOLING SYSTEM

Ram air for engine cooling enters through two intake openings in the front of the engine cowling. The cooling air is directed around the cylinders and other areas of the engine by baffling, and is then exhausted through an opening at the bottom aft edge of the cowling. No manual cowl flap cooling system control is required.

PROPELLER

The airplane is equipped with a two bladed, fixed pitch, one-piece forged aluminum alloy propeller which is anodized to retard corrosion. The propeller is 76 inches in diameter.

FUEL SYSTEM

The airplane fuel system (see Figure 7-6) consists of two vented integral fuel tanks (one tank in each wing), a three-position selector valve, auxiliary fuel pump, fuel shutoff valve, fuel strainer, engine driven fuel pump, fuel/air control unit, fuel distribution valve and fuel injection nozzles.

WARNING

UNUSABLE FUEL LEVELS FOR THIS AIRPLANE WERE DETERMINED IN ACCORDANCE WITH FEDERAL AVIATION REGULATIONS. FAILURE TO OPERATE THE AIRPLANE IN COMPLIANCE WITH FUEL LIMITATIONS SPECIFIED IN SECTION 2 MAY FURTHER REDUCE THE AMOUNT OF FUEL AVAILABLE IN FLIGHT.

FUEL TANKS	FUEL LEVEL (QUANTITY EACH TANK)	TOTAL FUEL	TOTAL UNUSABLE	TOTAL USABLE ALL FLIGHT CONDITIONS
Two	Full (28.0)	56.0	3.0	53.0

Figure 7-6. Fuel Quantity Data in U.S. Gallons

FUEL DISTRIBUTION

Fuel flows by gravity from the two wing tanks to a three-position selector valve, labeled BOTH, RIGHT and LEFT and on to the reservoir tank. From the reservoir tank fuel flows through the auxiliary fuel pump, past the fuel shutoff valve, through the fuel strainer to an engine driven fuel pump.

From the engine-driven fuel pump, fuel is delivered to the fuel/air control unit, where it is metered and directed to a fuel distribution valve (manifold) which distributes it to each cylinder. Fuel flow into each cylinder is continuous, and flow rate is determined by the amount of air passing through the fuel/air control unit.

Starting at serial number 172S9491 and on, and airplanes incorporating MK172-28-01, a fuel return system was added to promote smooth engine operation on the ground during hot weather. The return system carries a metered amount of fuel from the engine fuel/air control unit to the fuel reservoir tank. The increased fuel flow due to the return system results in lower fuel temperatures at the engine inlet, and helps to minimize the amount of fuel vapor generated in the fuel lines during high OAT operations.

FUEL INDICATING

Fuel quantity is measured by two float-type fuel quantity transmitters (one in each tank) and indicated by an electrically operated fuel quantity indicator on the left side of the instrument panel. The gauges are marked in gallons of fuel. An empty tank is indicated by a red line and the number 0. When an indicator shows an empty tank, approximately 1.5 gallons remain in each tank as unusable fuel. The indicators should not be relied upon for accurate readings during skids, slips, or unusual attitudes.

Each fuel tank also incorporates warning circuits which can detect low fuel conditions and erroneous transmitter messages. Anytime fuel in the tank drops below approximately 5 gallons (and remains below this level for more than 60 seconds), the amber LOW FUEL message will flash on the annunciator panel for approximately 10 seconds and then remain steady amber. The annunciator cannot be turned off by the pilot. If the left tank is low, the message will read L LOW FUEL. If the right tank is low, the message will read LOW FUEL R. If both tanks are low, the message will read L LOW FUEL R.

In addition to low fuel annunciation, the warning circuitry is designed to report failures with each transmitter caused by shorts, opens or transmitter resistance which increases over time. If the circuitry detects any one of these conditions, the fuel level indicator needle will go to the OFF position (below the 0 mark on the fuel indicator), and the amber annunciator will illuminate. If the left tank transmitter has failed, the message will read L LOW FUEL. If the right tank transmitter has failed, the message will read LOW FUEL R. If both tanks transmitters have failed, the message will read L LOW FUEL R.

Fuel pressure is measured by use of a transducer mounted near the fuel manifold. This transducer produces an electrical signal which is translated for the cockpit-mounted indicator in gallons per hour.

FUEL VENTING

Fuel system venting is essential to system operation. Blockage of the system will result in decreasing fuel flow and eventual engine stoppage. Venting is accomplished by an interconnecting line from the right fuel tank to the left tank. The left fuel tank is vented overboard through a vent line, equipped with a check valve, which protrudes from the bottom surface of the left wing near the wing strut. Both fuel filler caps are also vented.

REDUCED TANK CAPACITY

The airplane may be serviced to a reduced capacity to permit heavier cabin loadings. This is accomplished by filling each tank to the bottom edge of the fuel filler tab, thus giving a reduced fuel load of 17.5 gallons usable in each tank.

FUEL SELECTOR VALVE

The fuel selector valve should be in the BOTH position for takeoff, climb, landing, and maneuvers that involve prolonged slips or skids of more than 30 seconds. Operation from either LEFT or RIGHT tank is reserved for cruising flight.

NOTE

When the fuel selector valve handle is in the BOTH position in cruising flight, unequal fuel flow from each tank may occur if the wings are not maintained exactly level. Resulting wing heaviness can be alleviated gradually by turning the selector valve handle to the tank in the "heavy" wing. It is not practical to measure the time required to consume all of the fuel in one tank, and, after switching to the opposite tank, expect an equal duration from the remaining fuel. The airspace in both fuel tanks is interconnected by a vent line and, therefore, some sloshing of fuel between tanks can be expected when the tanks are nearly full and the wings are not level.

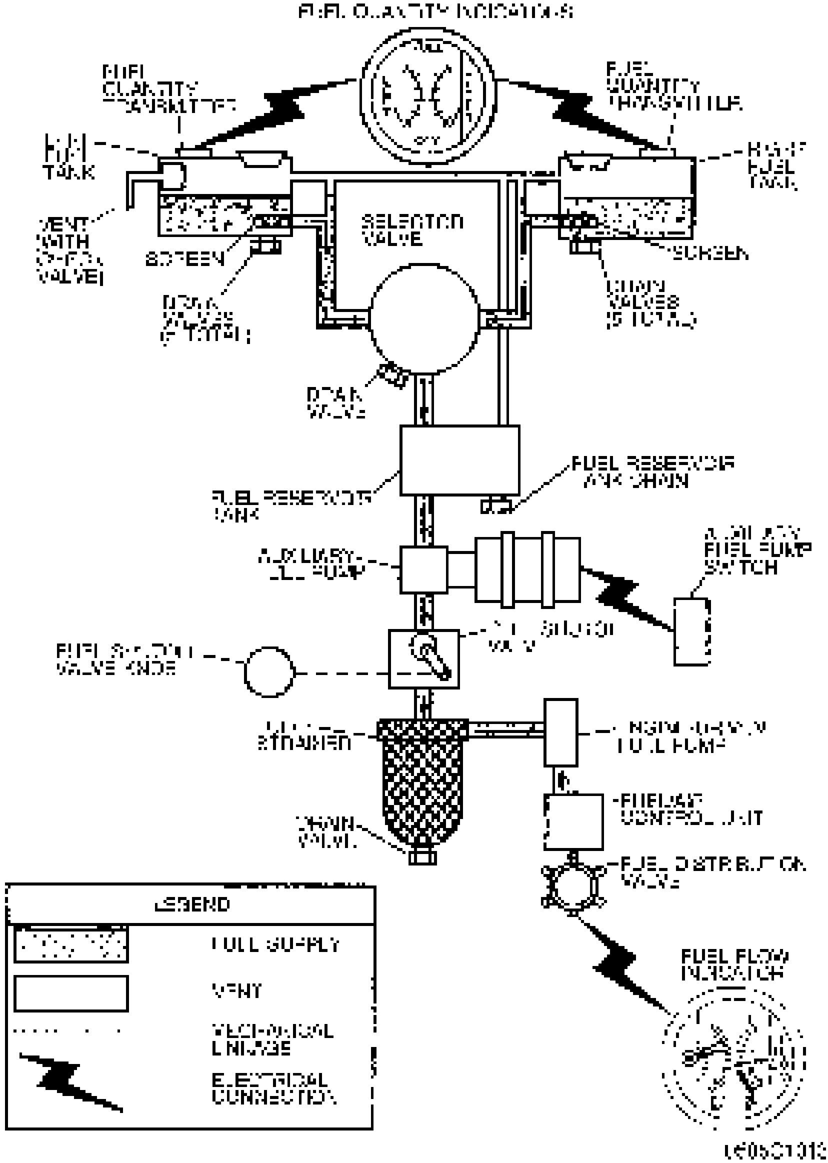


Figure 7-6. Fuel System Schematic
(Sheet 1 of 2)
172S8001 thru 172S9490

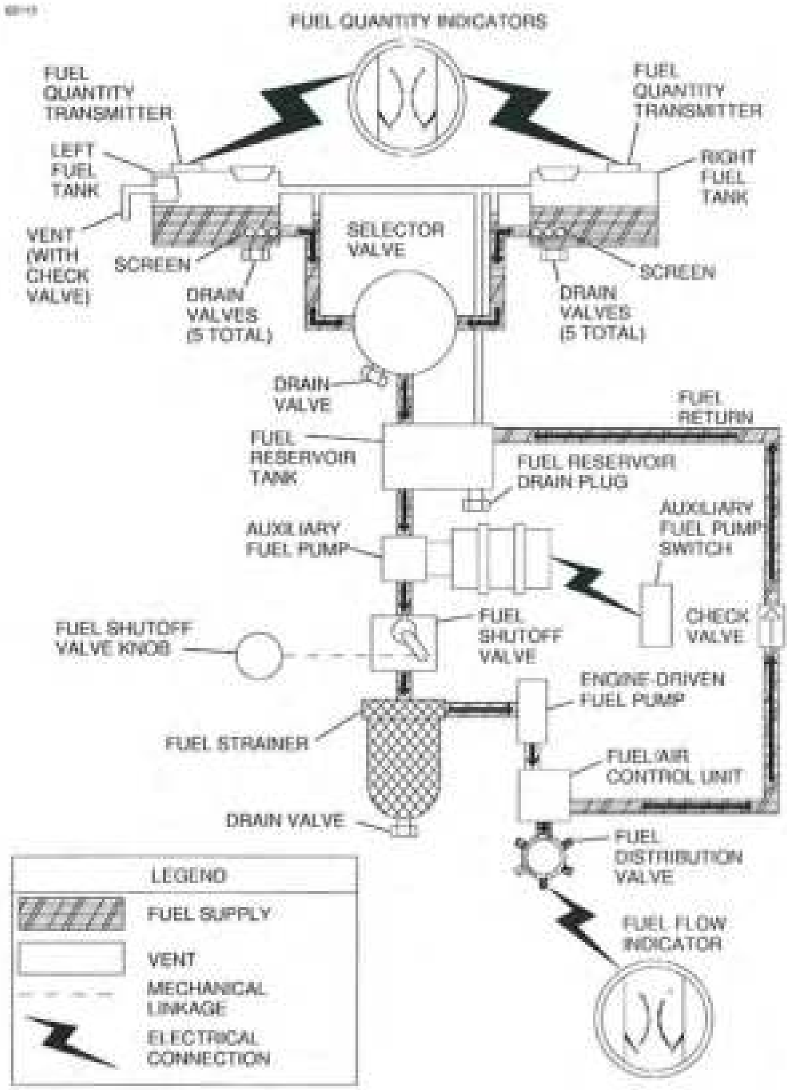


Figure 7-6. Fuel System Schematic
(Sheet 2 of 2)
172S9491 and On
And airplanes incorporating MK172-28-01.

NOTE

When the fuel tanks are 1/4 full or less, prolonged uncoordinated flight such as slips or skids can uncover the fuel tank outlets. Therefore, if operating with one fuel tank dry or if operating on LEFT or RIGHT tank when 1/4 full or less, do not allow the airplane to remain in uncoordinated flight for periods in excess of 30 seconds.

FUEL DRAIN VALVES

The fuel system is equipped with drain valves to provide a means for the examination of fuel in the system for contamination and grade. The system should be examined before each flight and after each refueling, by using the sampler cup provided to drain fuel from each wing tank sump, the fuel reservoir sump, the fuel selector drain and the fuel strainer sump. If any evidence of fuel contamination is found, it must be eliminated in accordance with the Preflight Inspection checklist and the discussion in Section 8 of this publication. If takeoff weight limitations for the next flight permit, the fuel tanks should be filled after each flight to prevent condensation.

BRAKE SYSTEM

The airplane has a single-disc, hydraulically actuated brake on each main landing gear wheel. Each brake is connected, by a hydraulic line, to a master cylinder attached to each of the pilot's rudder pedals. The brakes are operated by applying pressure to the top of either the left (pilot's) or right (copilot's) set of rudder pedals, which are interconnected. When the airplane is parked, both main wheel brakes may be set by utilizing the parking brake which is operated by a handle under the left side of the instrument panel. To apply the parking brake, set the brakes with the rudder pedals, pull the handle aft, and rotate it 90° down.

For maximum brake life, keep the brake system properly maintained, and minimize brake usage during taxi operations and landings.

Some of the symptoms of impending brake failure are: gradual decrease in braking action after brake application, noisy or dragging brakes, soft or spongy pedals, and excessive travel and weak braking action. If any of these symptoms appear, the brake system is in need of immediate attention. If, during taxi or landing roll, braking action decreases, let up on the pedals and then reapply the brakes with heavy pressure. If the brakes become spongy or pedal travel increases, pumping the pedals should build braking pressure. If one brake becomes weak or fails, use the other brake sparingly while using opposite rudder, as required, to offset the good brake.

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

The airplane is equipped with a 28-volt, direct current electrical system (Refer to Figure 7-7). The system is powered by a belt-driven, 60-amp alternator and a 24-volt battery, located on the left forward side of the firewall. Power is supplied to most general electrical circuits through a split primary bus bar, with an essential bus wired between the two primaries to provide power for the master switch, annunciator circuits and interior lighting.

Each primary bus bar is also connected to an avionics bus bar via a single avionics master switch. The primary buses are on anytime the master switch is turned on, and are not affected by starter or external power usage. The avionics buses are on when the master switch and avionics master switch are in the ON position.

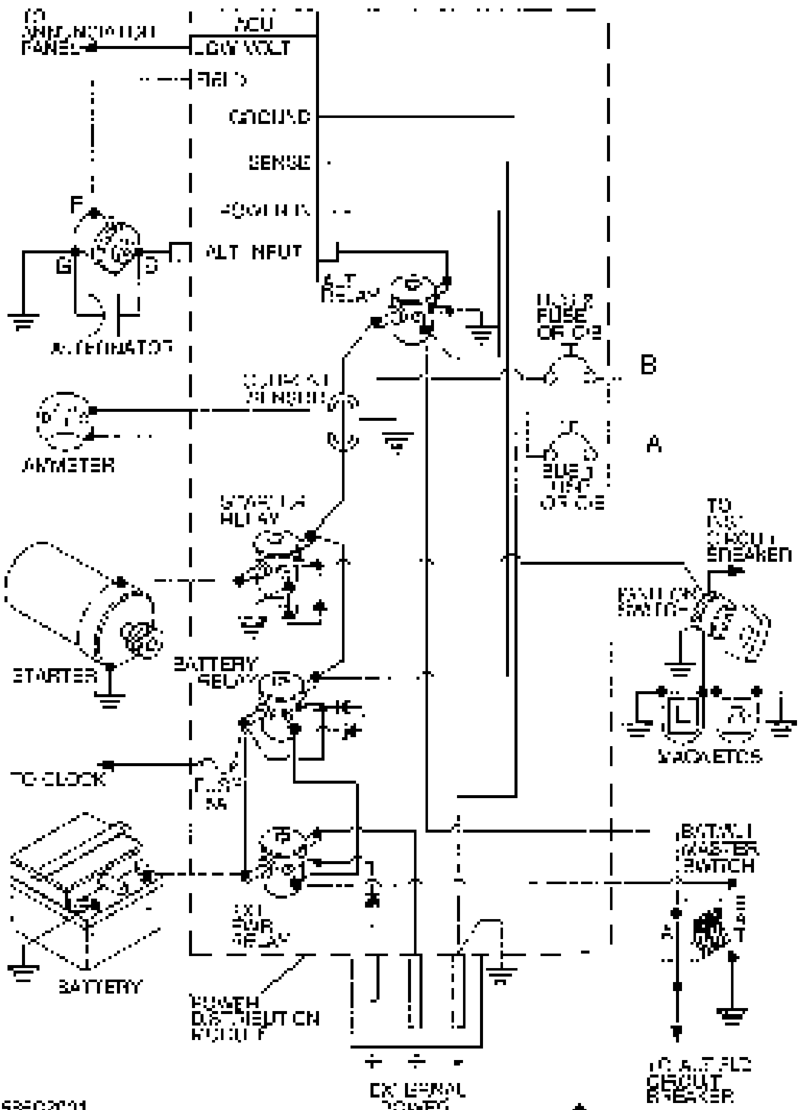


Figure 7-7. Electrical Schematic (Serials 172S8001 thru 172S8703)
(Sheet 1 of 2)

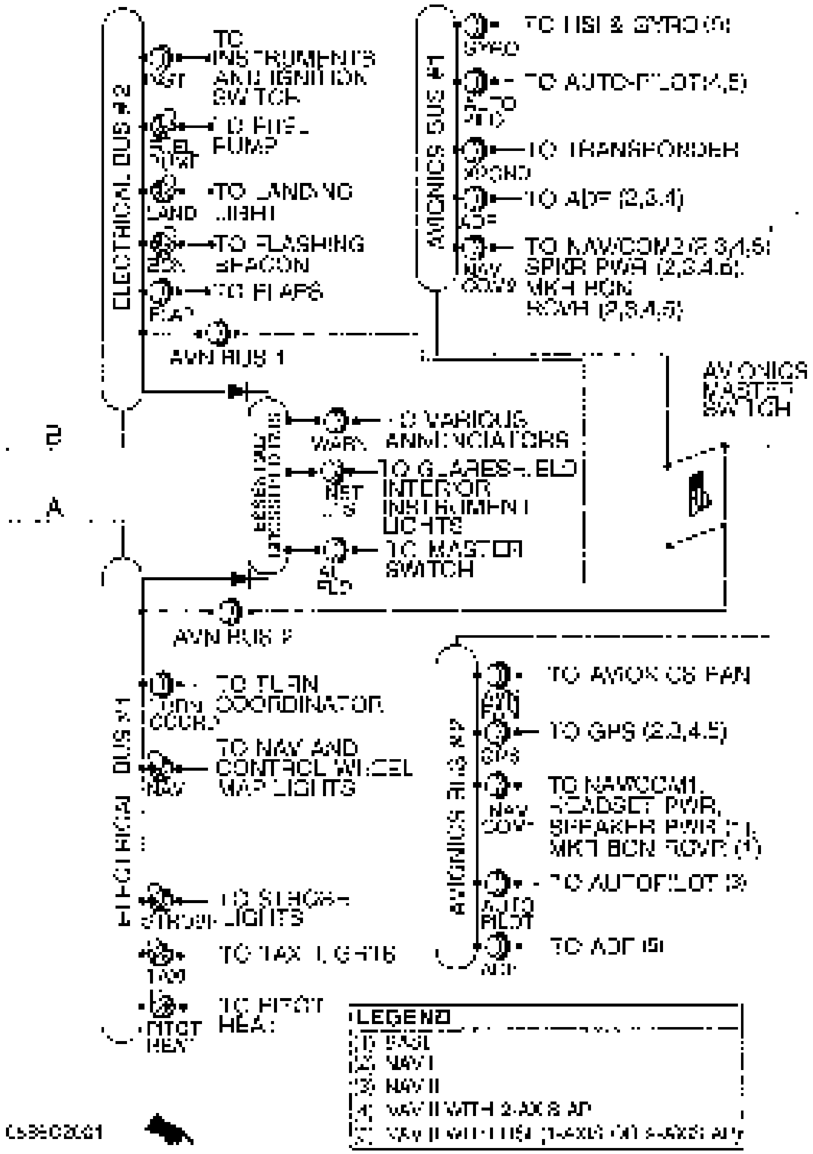


Figure 7-7. Electrical Schematic (Serials 172S8001 thru 172S8703)
(Sheet 2 of 2)

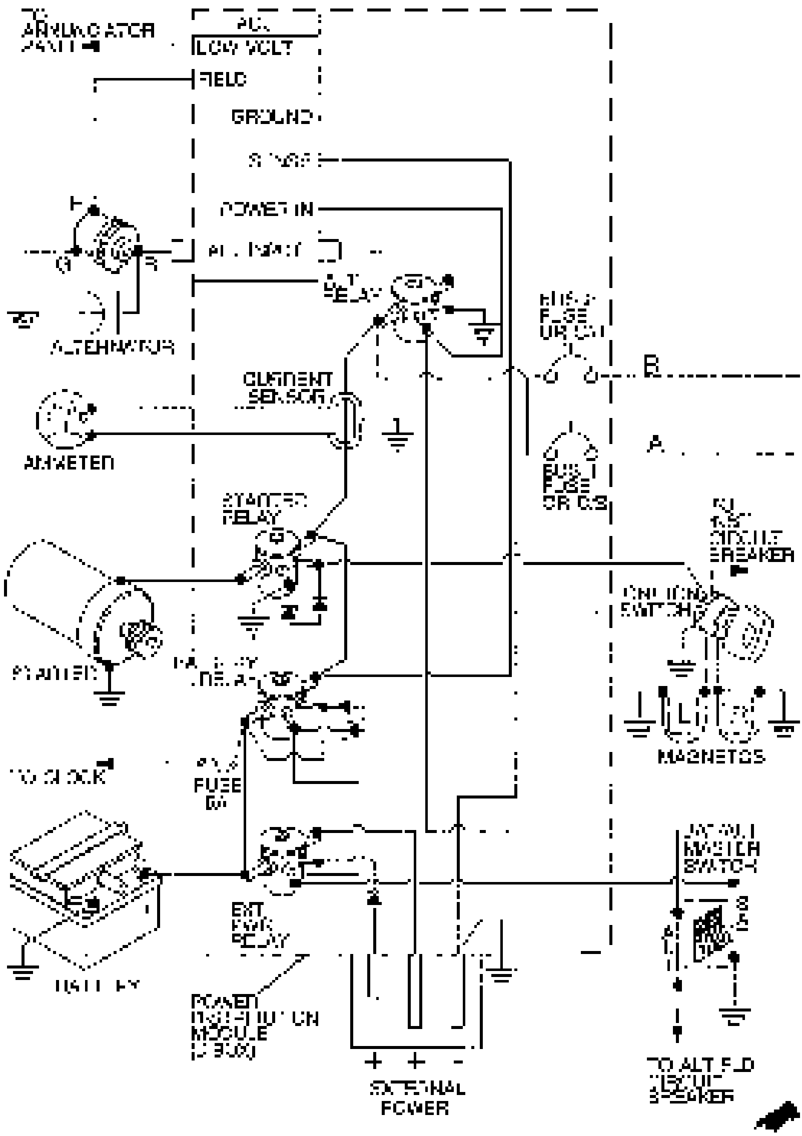


Figure 7-7A. Electrical Schematic (Serials 172S8704 and On)
(Sheet 1 of 2)

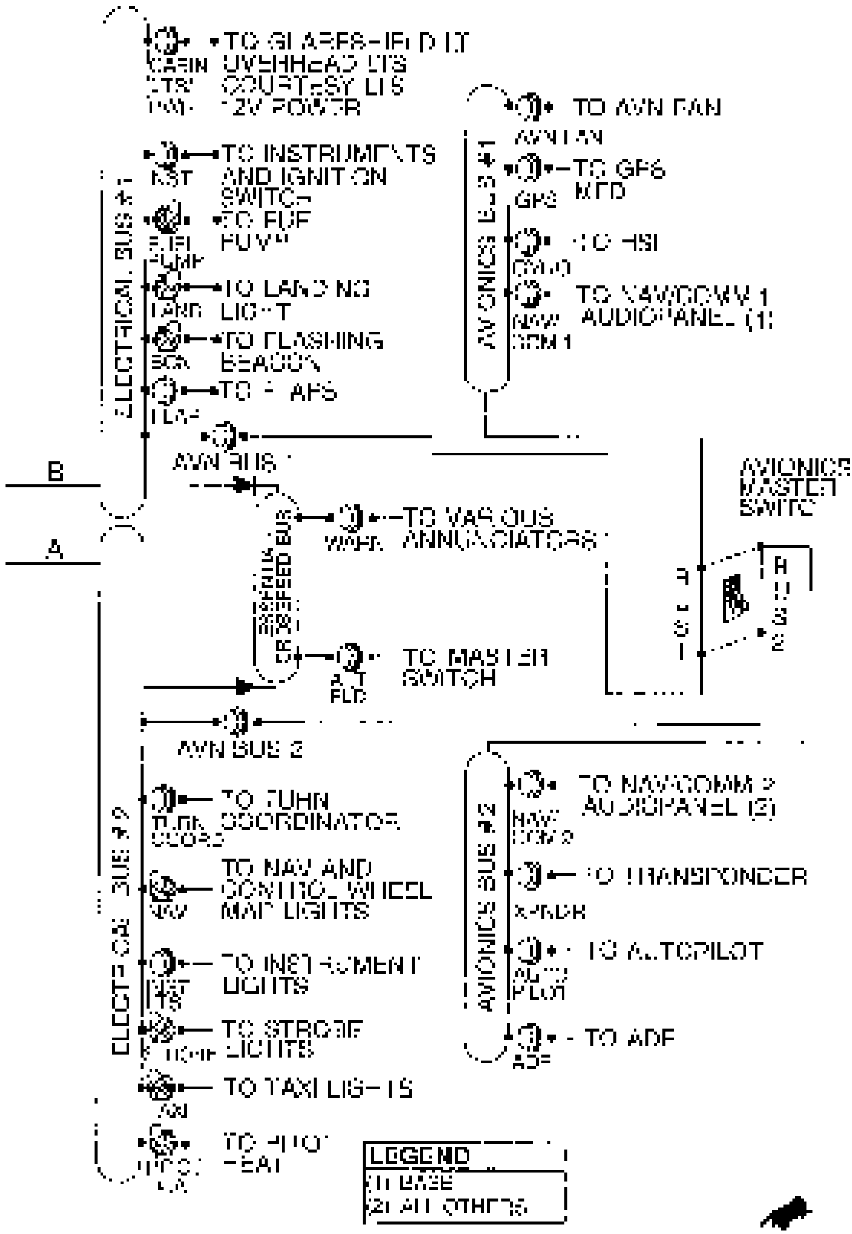


Figure 7-7A. Electrical Schematic (Serials 172S8704 and On)
(Sheet 2 of 2)

The airplane uses a power distribution module (J-Box), located on the left forward side of the firewall, to house all relays used throughout the airplane electrical system. In addition, the alternator control unit and the external power connector are housed within the module.

ANNUNCIATOR PANEL

An annunciator panel (with integral toggle switch) is located on the left side of the instrument panel and provides caution (amber) and warning (red) messages for selected portions of the airplane systems. The annunciator is designed to flash messages for approximately 10 seconds to gain the attention of the pilot before changing to steady on. The annunciator panel cannot be turned off by the pilot.

Inputs to the annunciator come from each fuel transmitter, the low oil pressure switch, the vacuum transducers and the alternator control unit (ACU). Individual LED bulbs illuminate each message and may be replaced through the rear of the annunciator. Illumination intensity can be controlled by placing the toggle switch in either the DIM or BRT positions (earlier serial number airplanes) or the DAY or NIGHT positions (later serial number airplanes).

The annunciator panel can be tested by placing the Master switch in the ON position and holding the annunciator panel test switch in the TST (earlier serial number airplanes) or the TEST (later serial number airplanes) position. All amber and red messages will flash until the switch is released.

NOTE

When the Master switch is turned ON, some annunciators will flash for approximately 10 seconds before illuminating steadily. When the annunciator panel test switch is held in the TST (earlier serial number airplanes) or the TEST (later serial number airplanes) position, all remaining lights will flash until the switch is released.

MASTER SWITCH

The master switch is a split-rocker type switch labeled MASTER, and is ON in the up position and OFF in the down position. The right half of the switch, labeled BAT, controls the battery power to the airplane. The left half, labeled ALT, controls the alternator.

CAUTION

PRIOR TO TURNING THE MASTER SWITCH ON OR OFF, STARTING THE ENGINE OR APPLYING AN EXTERNAL POWER SOURCE, THE AVIONICS MASTER SWITCH SHOULD BE TURNED OFF TO PREVENT ANY HARMFUL TRANSIENT VOLTAGE FROM DAMAGING THE AVIONICS EQUIPMENT.

Normally, both sides of the master switch should be used simultaneously; however, the BAT side of the switch could be turned on separately to check equipment while on the ground. To check or use avionics equipment or radios while on the ground, the avionics power switch must also be turned on. The ALT side of the switch, when placed in the OFF position, removes the alternator from the electrical system. With this switch in the OFF position, the entire electrical load is placed on the battery. Continued operation with the alternator switch in the OFF position will reduce battery power low enough to open the battery contactor, remove power from the alternator field, and prevent alternator restart.

AVIONICS MASTER SWITCH

Electrical power for each Avionics Bus is supplied from a primary Electrical Bus. For airplane serial numbers 172S8001 through 172S8703, except for certain non-U.S. certified airplanes, both Avionics Buses are controlled by a single-section rocker-type Avionics Master switch. At serial number 172S8704 and on, a two-section or "split" rocker-type Avionics Master switch controls power to each Avionics Bus independently. Placing the rocker in the up (ON) position provides power to the Avionics Bus. Placing the rocker in the down (OFF) position removes power from the Avionics Bus. The Avionics Master switch is located on the lower left side of the instrument panel.

NOTE

For airplane serial numbers 172S8001 through 172S8703, aircraft certified outside the United States can have a two-section or "split" Avionics Master switch. The two-section Avionics Master switch enables independent operation of Avionics Bus 1 and Avionics Bus 2.

With the Avionics Master rocker in the OFF position, no electrical power is provided to the avionics, even when the Master switch or the individual avionics component equipment switches are in their ON positions. The Avionics Master switch (both sides, if two-section) should be placed in the OFF position before switching the Master switch ON or OFF, starting the engine, or applying an external power source.

Each avionics bus also incorporates a separate circuit breaker installed between the primary bus and the avionics master switch. In the event of an electrical malfunction, this breaker will trip and take the affected avionics bus off-line.

AMMETER

The ammeter/vacuum gage is located on the lower left side of the instrument panel. It indicates the amount of current, in amperes, from the alternator to the battery or from the battery to the airplane electrical system. When the engine is operating and the master switch is turned on, the ammeter indicates the charging rate applied to the battery. In the event the alternator is not functioning or the electrical load exceeds the output of the alternator, the ammeter indicates the battery discharge rate.

LOW VOLTAGE ANNUNCIATION

The low voltage warning annunciator is incorporated in the annunciator panel and activates when voltage falls below 24.5 volts. If low voltage is detected, the red annunciation VOLTS will flash for approximately 10 seconds before illuminating steadily. The pilot cannot turn off the annunciator.

In the event an overvoltage condition occurs, the alternator control unit automatically opens the ALT FLD circuit breaker, removing alternator field current and shutting off the alternator. The battery will then supply system current as shown by a discharge rate on the ammeter. Under these conditions, depending on electrical system load, the low voltage warning annunciator will illuminate when system voltage drops below normal. The alternator control unit may be reset by resetting the circuit breaker. If the low voltage warning annunciator extinguishes, normal alternator charging has resumed; however, if the annunciator illuminates again, a malfunction has occurred, and the flight should be terminated as soon as practicable.

NOTE

Illumination of the low voltage annunciator and ammeter discharge indications may occur during low RPM conditions with an electrical load on the system, such as during a low RPM taxi. Under these conditions, the light will go out at higher RPM.

CIRCUIT BREAKERS AND FUSES

All circuit breakers inside the airplane are of the "push to reset" or "switch/breaker" type. The power distribution module uses spade type (automotive style) fuses and one glass type fuse (controlling the clock).

Spare fuses for the power distribution module are located inside the module. If one of the spare fuses is used, a replacement spare should be obtained and reinstalled before the next flight.

EXTERNAL POWER RECEPTACLE

An external power receptacle is integral to the power distribution module and allows the use of an external electrical power source for cold weather starting, and during lengthy maintenance work on electrical and avionics equipment. The receptacle is located on the left side of the engine cowling, just forward of the firewall and midway up the side. Access to the receptacle is gained by removing the cover plate (earlier serial number airplanes) or opening the hinged access door (later serial number airplanes).

The power distribution module (J-Box) incorporates a circuit which will close the battery contactor when external power is applied through the ground service plug receptacle with the master switch turned on. This feature is intended as a servicing aid when battery power is too low to close the contactor, and should not be used to avoid performing proper maintenance procedures on a low battery.

NOTE

- If no avionics equipment is to be used or serviced, the avionics master switch should be in the OFF position. If maintenance is required on the avionics equipment, use a regulated external power source to prevent damage to the avionics equipment by transient voltage. Do not crank or start the engine with the avionics master switch in the ON position.
- Before connecting an external power source (generator type or battery cart), the avionics master switch and the master switch should be turned off.

LIGHTING SYSTEMS

EXTERIOR LIGHTING

Exterior lighting consists of navigation lights on the wing tips and top of the rudder, a dual landing/taxi light configuration located in the left wing leading edge, a flashing beacon mounted on top of the vertical fin, and a strobe light on each wing tip. In addition, two courtesy lights are recessed into the lower surface of each wing and provide illumination for each cabin door area.

The exterior courtesy lights (and the rear cabin dome light) are turned on by pressing the rear cabin light switch. Pressing the rear cabin light switch again will extinguish the three lights. The remaining exterior lights are operated by breaker/switches located on the lower left instrument panel. To activate these lights, place switch in the UP position. To deactivate light, place in the DOWN position.

NOTE

The strobes and flashing beacon should not be used when flying through clouds or overcast; the flashing light reflected from water droplets or particles in the atmosphere, particularly at night, can produce vertigo and loss of orientation.

INTERIOR LIGHTING

Interior lighting is controlled by a combination of flood lighting, glareshield lighting, pedestal lighting, panel lighting, radio lighting and pilot control wheel lighting.

Flood lighting is accomplished using two lights in the front and a single dome light in the rear. All flood lights are contained in the overhead console, and are turned on and off with push type switches located near each light. The two front lights are individually rotatable, providing directional lighting for the pilot and front passenger. The rear dome light is a fixed position light and provides for general illumination in the rear cabin area.

Glareshield lighting is provided by either a fluorescent light or a series of LED lights recessed into the lower surface of the glareshield. This light is controlled by rotating the GLARESHIELD LT dimmer, located below the nav indicators. Rotating the dimmer clockwise increases light intensity, and rotating the dimmer counterclockwise decrease light intensity.

Pedestal lighting consists of a single, hooded light located above the fuel selector. This light is controlled by rotating the PEDESTAL LT dimmer, located below the nav indicators. Rotating the dimmer clockwise increases light intensity, and rotating the dimmer counterclockwise decreases light intensity.

Panel lighting is accomplished using individual lights mounted in each instrument and gauge. These lights are wired in parallel and are controlled by the PANEL LT dimmer, located below the nav indicators. Rotating the dimmer clockwise increases light intensity, and rotating the dimmer counterclockwise decreases light intensity.

Pilot control wheel lighting is accomplished by use of a rheostat and light assembly, located underneath the pilot control wheel. The light provides downward illumination from the bottom of the control wheel to the pilot's lap area. To operate the light, first turn on the NAV light switch, then adjust the map light intensity with the knurled rheostat knob. Rotating the dimmer clockwise increases light intensity, and rotating the dimmer counterclockwise decreases light intensity.

In addition to the RADIO LT dimmer, lighting intensity for the avionics displays and the NAV indicators (pilot's panel) is controlled by the annunciator panel test switch. When the switch is in the BRT position (earlier serial number airplanes) or the DAY position (later serial number airplanes), the lighting may be off regardless of the RADIO LT dimmer position.

Regardless of the light system in question, the most probable cause of a light failure is a burned out bulb. However, in the event any of the lighting systems fail to illuminate when turned on, check the appropriate circuit breaker. If the circuit breaker has opened, and there is no obvious indication of a short circuit (smoke or odor), turn off the light switch of the affected light, reset the breaker, and turn the switch on again. If the breaker opens again, do not reset it.

CABIN HEATING, VENTILATING AND DEFROSTING SYSTEM

The temperature and volume of airflow into the cabin can be regulated by manipulation of the push-pull CABIN HT and CABIN AIR controls (Refer to Figure 7-9). Both controls are the double-button locking type and permit intermediate settings.

For cabin ventilation, pull the CABIN AIR knob out. To raise the air temperature, pull the CABIN HT knob out approximately 1/4 to 1/2 inch for a small amount of cabin heat. Additional heat is available by pulling the knob out farther; maximum heat is available with the CABIN HT knob pulled out and the CABIN AIR knob pushed full in. When no heat is desired in the cabin, the CABIN HT knob is pushed full in.

Front cabin heat and ventilating air is supplied by outlet holes spaced across a cabin manifold just forward of the pilot's and copilot's feet. Rear cabin heat and air is supplied by two ducts from the manifold, one extending down each side of the cabin to an outlet just aft of the rudder pedals at floor level. Windshield defrost air is also supplied by two ducts leading from the cabin manifold to defroster outlets near the lower edge of the windshield. Two knobs control sliding valves in either defroster outlet to permit regulation of defroster airflow.

Separate adjustable ventilators supply additional air; one near each upper corner of the windshield supplies air for the pilot and copilot, and two ventilators are available for the rear cabin area to supply air to the rear seat passengers. There are additional ventilators located in various positions in the cockpit.

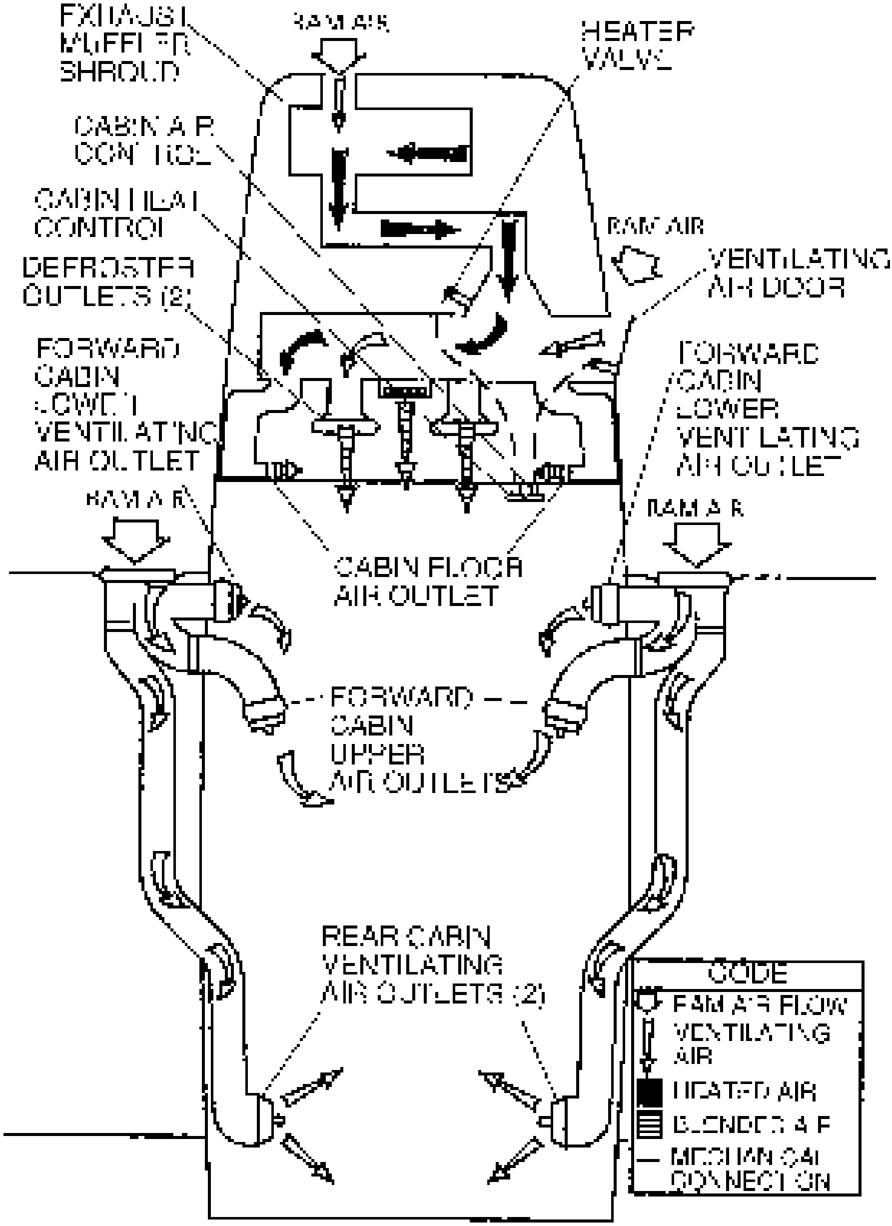


Figure 7-8. Cabin Heating, Ventilating and Defrosting System.

PITOT-STATIC SYSTEM AND INSTRUMENTS

The pitot-static system supplies ram air pressure to the airspeed indicator and static pressure to the airspeed indicator, vertical speed indicator and altimeter. The system is composed of a heated pitot tube mounted on the lower surface of the left wing, an external static port on the lower left side of the forward fuselage, and the associated plumbing necessary to connect the instruments to the sources.

The heated pitot system consists of a heating element in the pitot tube, a 5-amp switch/breaker labeled PITOT HEAT, and associated wiring. The switch/breaker is located on the lower left side of the instrument panel. When the pitot heat switch is turned on, the element in the pitot tube is heated electrically to maintain proper operation in possible icing conditions.

A static pressure alternate source valve is installed below the throttle, and can be used if the external static source is malfunctioning. This valve supplies static pressure from inside the cabin instead of the external static port.

If erroneous instrument readings are suspected due to water or ice in the pressure line going to the standard external static pressure source, the alternate static source valve should be pulled on.

Pressures within the cabin will vary with open heater/vents and windows. Refer to Section 5 for the effect of varying cabin pressures on airspeed readings.

AIRSPEED INDICATOR

The airspeed indicator is calibrated in knots. It incorporates a true airspeed window which allows true airspeed to be read off the face of the dial. In addition, the indicator incorporates a window at the twelve o'clock position which displays pressure altitude overlayed with a temperature scale.

Limitation and range markings (in KIAS) include the white arc (40 to 85 knots), green arc (48 to 129 knots), yellow arc (129 to 163 knots), and a red line (163 knots).

To find true airspeed, first determine pressure altitude and outside air temperature. Using this data, rotate the lower left knob until pressure altitude aligns with outside air temperature in the twelve o'clock window. True airspeed (corrected for pressure and temperature) can now be read in the lower window.

VERTICAL SPEED INDICATOR

The vertical speed indicator depicts airplane rate of climb or descent in feet per minute. The pointer is actuated by atmospheric pressure changes resulting from changes of altitude as supplied by the static source.

ALTIMETER

Airplane altitude is depicted by a barometric type altimeter. A knob near the lower left portion of the indicator provides adjustment of the instrument's barometric scale to the current altimeter setting.

VACUUM SYSTEM AND INSTRUMENTS

The vacuum system (Refer to Figure 7-9) provides suction necessary to operate the attitude indicator and the directional indicator. The system consists of two engine-driven vacuum pumps, two pressure switches for measuring vacuum available through each pump, a vacuum relief valve, a vacuum system air filter, vacuum operated instruments, a vacuum gauge, low vacuum warning on the annunciator, and a manifold with check valves to allow for normal vacuum system operation if one of the vacuum pumps should fail.

ATTITUDE INDICATOR

The attitude indicator is a vacuum air-driven gyro that gives a visual indication of flight attitude. Bank attitude is presented by a pointer at the top of the indicator relative to the bank scale which has index marks at 10°, 20°, 30°, 60°, and 90° either side of the center mark. Pitch and roll attitudes are presented by a miniature airplane superimposed over a symbolic horizon area divided into two sections by a white horizon bar. The upper "blue sky" area and the lower "ground" area have pitch reference lines useful for pitch attitude control. A knob at the bottom of the instrument is provided for in-flight adjustment of the symbolic airplane to the horizon bar for a more accurate flight attitude indication.

DIRECTIONAL INDICATOR

A directional indicator is a vacuum air-driven gyro that displays airplane heading on a compass card in relation to a fixed simulated airplane image and index. The indicator will precess slightly over a period of time. Therefore, the compass card should be set with the magnetic compass just prior to takeoff, and readjusted as required throughout the flight. A knob on the lower left edge of the instrument is used to adjust the compass card to correct for precession. A knob on the lower right edge of the instrument is used to move the heading bug.

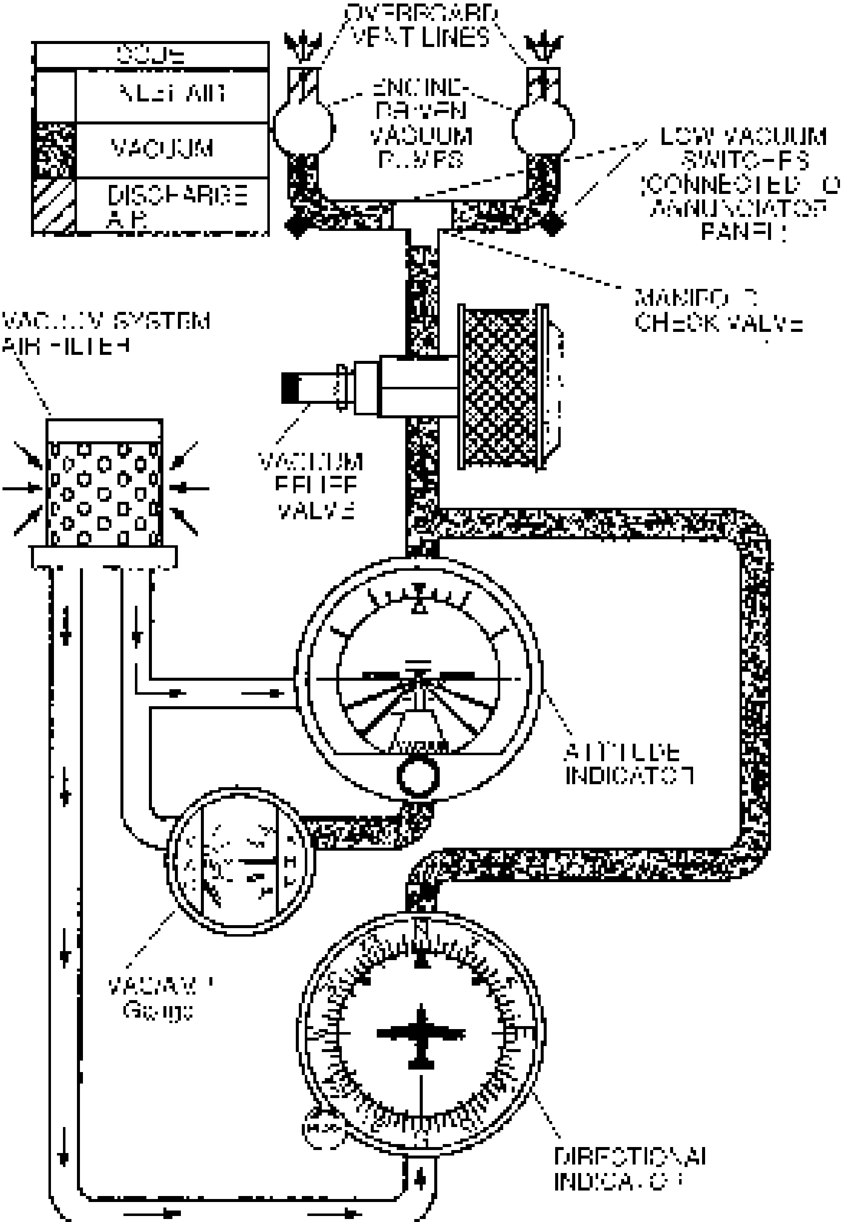


Figure 7-9. Vacuum System

VACUUM GAGE

The vacuum gage is part of the vacuum gage/ammeter, located on the lower left corner of the instrument panel. It is calibrated in inches of mercury and indicates vacuum air available for operation of the attitude and directional indicators. The desired suction range is 4.5 to 5.5 inches of mercury. Normally, a vacuum reading out of this range may indicate a system malfunction or improper adjustment, and in this case, the attitude and directional (heading) indicators should not be considered reliable. However, due to lower atmospheric pressures at higher altitudes, the vacuum gage may indicate as low as 4.0 in. Hg. at 20,000 feet and still be adequate for normal system operation.

LOW VACUUM ANNUNCIATION

Each engine-driven vacuum pump is plumbed to a common manifold, located forward of the firewall. From the tee, a single line runs into the cabin to operate the various vacuum system instruments. This tee contains check valves to prevent back flow into a pump if it fails. Transducers are located just upstream of the tee and measure vacuum output of each pump.

If output of the left pump falls below 3.0 in. Hg., the amber L VAC message will flash on the annunciator panel for approximately 10 seconds before turning steady on. If output of the right pump falls below 3.0 in. Hg., the amber VAC R message will flash on the annunciator panel for approximately 10 seconds before turning steady on. If output of both pumps falls below 3.0 in. Hg., the amber L VAC R message will flash on the annunciator panel for approximately 10 seconds before turning steady on.

CLOCK / O.A.T. INDICATOR

An integrated clock / O.A.T. / voltmeter is installed in the upper left side of the instrument panel as standard equipment. For a complete description and operating instructions, refer to the Supplements, Section 9.

STALL WARNING SYSTEM

The airplane is equipped with a pneumatic type stall warning system consisting of an inlet in the leading edge of the left wing, an air operated horn near the upper left corner of the windshield, and associated plumbing. As the airplane approaches a stall, the low pressure on the upper surface of the wings moves forward around the leading edge of the wings. This low pressure creates a differential pressure in the stall warning system which draws air through the warning horn, resulting in an audible warning at 5 to 10 knots above stall in all flight conditions.

STANDARD AVIONICS

Standard avionics for the Model 172S airplanes include the following equipment:

KX 155A	Nav/Com Radio with KI 208 or KI 209A Indicator Head
KT 76C	Transponder
KMA 26	Audio Panel
8060-1	Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT)

For complete operating instructions on the standard and optional avionics systems, refer to the Supplements, Section 9.

AVIONICS SUPPORT EQUIPMENT

Avionics operations are supported by the avionics cooling fan, microphone and headset installations and static discharge wicks.

AVIONICS COOLING FAN

An avionics cooling fan is installed on the left side of the interior firewall. The system utilizes a single electric fan and associated ductwork to force-cool the center stack radios.

Power to the electric fan is supplied through the AVN FAN circuit breaker. The fan operates whenever the Master and Avionics Master switches are both ON.

MICROPHONE AND HEADSET INSTALLATIONS

Standard equipment for the airplane includes a hand-held microphone, an overhead speaker, two remote-keyed microphone switches on the control wheels, and provisions for boom mic/headsets at each pilot and passenger station.

The hand-held microphone contains an integral push-to-talk switch. This microphone is plugged into the center pedestal and is accessible to both the pilot and front passenger. Depressing the push-to-talk switch allows audio transmission on the Com radios.

The overhead speaker is located in the center overhead console. Volume and output for this speaker is controlled through the audio panel.

Each control wheel contains a miniature push-to-talk switch. This switch allows the pilot or front passenger to transmit on the Com radios using remote mics.

Each station of the airplane is wired for aviation-style headsets. Mic and headphone jacks are located on each respective arm rest and allow for communications between passengers and pilot. The system is wired so that microphones are all voice-activated. Additional wiring provisions inside the audio panel ensure that only the pilot or front passenger can transmit through the com radios.

NOTE

To ensure audibility and clarity when transmitting with the handheld microphone, always hold it as closely as possible to the lips, then key the microphone and speak directly into it. Avoid covering opening on back side of microphone for optimum noise canceling.

STATIC DISCHARGERS

Static wicks (static dischargers) are installed at various points throughout the airframe to reduce interference from precipitation static. Under some severe static conditions, loss of radio signals is possible even with static dischargers installed. Whenever possible, avoid known severe precipitation areas to prevent loss of dependable radio signals. If avoidance is impractical, minimize airspeed and anticipate temporary loss of radio signals while in these areas.

Static dischargers lose their effectiveness with age, and therefore, should be checked periodically (at least at every annual inspection) by qualified avionics technicians, etc.

CABIN FEATURES

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT)

A remote switch/annunciator is installed on the top center location of the copilot's instrument panel for control of the ELT from the flight crew station. The annunciator, which is in the center of the rocker switch, illuminates when the ELT transmitter is transmitting. The ELT emits an omni-directional signal on the international distress frequencies of 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz. General aviation and commercial aircraft, the FAA and CAP monitor 121.5 MHz, and 243.0 MHz is monitored by the military. For a basic overview of the ELT, refer to the Supplements, Section 9.

CABIN FIRE EXTINGUISHER

A portable Halon 1211 (Bromochlorodifluoromethane) fire extinguisher is standard and is installed on the floorboard near the pilot's seat where it would be accessible in case of fire. The extinguisher has an Underwriters Laboratories classification of 5-B:C. If installed, the extinguisher should be checked prior to each flight to ensure that its bottle pressure, as indicated by the gauge on the bottle, is within the green arc (approximately 125 psi) and the operating lever lock pin is securely in place.

To operate the fire extinguisher:

1. Loosen retaining clamp(s) and remove extinguisher from bracket.
2. Hold extinguisher upright, pull operating ring pin, and press lever while directing the discharge at the base of the fire at the near edge. Progress toward the back of the fire by moving the nozzle rapidly with a side to side sweeping motion.

⚠ WARNING

VENTILATE THE CABIN PROMPTLY AFTER SUCCESSFULLY EXTINGUISHING THE FIRE TO REDUCE THE GASES PRODUCED BY THERMAL DECOMPOSITION.

3. Anticipate approximately eight seconds of discharge duration.

Fire extinguishers should be recharged by a qualified fire extinguisher agency after each use. Such agencies are listed under "Fire Extinguisher" in the telephone directory. After recharging, secure the extinguisher to its mounting bracket; do not allow it to lie loose on shelves or seats.

SECTION 8
AIRPLANE HANDLING, SERVICE & MAINTENANCE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

INTRODUCTION

This section contains factory recommended procedures for proper ground handling and routine care and servicing of your airplane. It also identifies certain inspection and maintenance requirements which must be followed if your airplane is to retain that new airplane performance and dependability. It is important to follow a planned schedule of lubrication and preventive maintenance based on climatic and flying conditions encountered in your local area.

Keep in touch with your local Cessna Service Station and take advantage of their knowledge and experience. Your Cessna Service Station knows your airplane and how to maintain it, and will remind you when lubrications and oil changes are necessary, as well as other seasonal and periodic services.

The airplane should be regularly inspected and maintained in accordance with information found in the airplane maintenance manual and in company issued service bulletins and service newsletters. All service bulletins pertaining to the aircraft by serial number should be accomplished and the airplane should receive repetitive and required inspections. Cessna does not condone modifications, whether by Supplemental Type Certificate or otherwise, unless these certificates are held and/or approved by Cessna. Other modifications may void warranties on the airplane since Cessna has no way of knowing the full effect on the overall airplane. Operation of an airplane that has been modified may be a risk to the occupants, and operating procedures and performance data set forth in the operating handbook may no longer be considered accurate for the modified airplane.

IDENTIFICATION PLATE

All correspondence regarding your airplane should include the Serial Number. The Serial Number, Model Number, Production Certificate Number (PC) and Type Certificate Number (TC) can be found on the Identification Plate, located on the aft left tailcone. A secondary Identification Plate is installed on the lower part of the left forward doorpost on earlier serial number airplanes. The Finish and Trim Plate, located on the lower part of the left forward doorpost, contains a code describing the exterior paint configuration for the airplane. The code may be used in conjunction with an applicable Illustrated Parts Catalog if finish and trim information is needed.

CESSNA OWNER ADVISORIES

Cessna Owner Advisories are sent to Cessna Aircraft FAA Registered owners of record at no charge to inform them about mandatory and/or beneficial aircraft service requirements and product changes. Copies of the service bulletins are available from Cessna Service Stations and Cessna Customer Service.

UNITED STATES AIRPLANE OWNERS

If your airplane is registered in the U. S., appropriate Cessna Owner Advisories will be mailed to you automatically according to the latest aircraft registration name and address which you have provided to the FAA. Therefore, it is important that you provide correct and up-to-date mailing information to the FAA.

If you require a duplicate Owner Advisory to be sent to an address different from the FAA aircraft registration address, please complete and return an Owner Advisory Application (otherwise no action is required on your part).

INTERNATIONAL AIRPLANE OWNERS

To receive Cessna Owner Advisories, please complete and return an Owner Advisory Application.

Receipt of a valid Owner Advisory Application will establish your Cessna Owner Advisory service for one year, after which you will be sent a renewal notice. It is important that you respond promptly to update your address for this critical service.

PUBLICATIONS

Various publications and flight operation aids are furnished in the airplane when delivered from the factory. These items are listed below.

- Customer Care Program Handbook
- Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual
- Pilot's Checklist
- Passenger Briefing Card
- Cessna Sales and Service Directory

To obtain additional publications or Owner Advisory information, you may contact Cessna's Product Support Department at (316) 517-5800. Fax (316) 942-9006 or write to The Cessna Aircraft Company, P.O. Box 7706, Wichita, KS 67277, Dept 751C.

The following additional publications, plus many other supplies that are applicable to your airplane, are available from your local Cessna Service Station.

- Information Manual (contains Pilot's Operating Handbook Information)
- Maintenance Manual, Wiring Diagram Manual and Illustrated Parts Catalog

Your local Cessna Service Station has a Customer Care Supplies and Publications Catalog covering all available items, many of which the Service Station keeps on hand. The Service Station can place an order for any item which is not in stock.

NOTE

A Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual which is lost or destroyed may be replaced by contacting your local Cessna Service Station. An affidavit containing the owner's name, airplane serial number and reason for replacement must be included in replacement requests since the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual is identified for specific serial numbered airplanes only.

AIRPLANE FILE

There are miscellaneous data, information and licenses that are a part of the airplane file. The following is a checklist for that file. In addition, a periodic check should be made of the latest Federal Aviation Regulations to ensure that all data requirements are met.

To be displayed in the airplane at all times:

1. Aircraft Airworthiness Certificate (FAA Form 8100-2).
2. Aircraft Registration Certificate (FAA Form 8050-3).
3. Aircraft Radio Station License (if applicable).

To be carried in the airplane at all times:

1. Current Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual.
2. Weight and Balance, and associated papers (latest copy of the Repair and Alteration Form, FAA Form 337, if applicable).
3. Equipment List.

To be made available upon request:

1. Airplane Logbook.
2. Engine Logbook.

Most of the items listed are required by the United States Federal Aviation Regulations. Since the Regulations of other nations may require other documents and data, owners of airplanes not registered in the United States should check with their own aviation officials to determine their individual requirements.

Cessna recommends that these items, plus the Pilot's Checklists, Customer Care Program Handbook and Customer Care Card, be carried in the airplane at all times.

AIRPLANE INSPECTION PERIODS

FAA REQUIRED INSPECTIONS

As required by U.S. Federal Aviation Regulations, all civil aircraft of U.S. registry must undergo a complete inspection (annual) each twelve calendar months. In addition to the required annual inspection, aircraft operated commercially (for hire) must have a complete inspection every 100 hours of operation.

The FAA may require other inspections by the issuance of airworthiness directives applicable to the airplane, engine, propeller and components. It is the responsibility of the owner/operator to ensure compliance with all applicable airworthiness directives, and when the inspections are repetitive, to take appropriate steps to prevent inadvertent noncompliance.

CESSNA INSPECTION PROGRAMS

In lieu of the 100 hour and annual inspection requirements, an airplane may be inspected in accordance with a Progressive Care Inspection Program or a PhaseCard Inspection Program. Both programs offer systems which allow the work load to be divided into smaller operations that can be accomplished in shorter time periods.

The Cessna Progressive Care Inspection Program allows an airplane to be inspected and maintained in four operations. The four operations are recycled each 200 hours and are recorded in a specially provided Aircraft Inspection Log as each operation is conducted.

The PhaseCard Inspection Program offers a parallel system for high-utilization flight operations (approximately 600 flight hours per year). This system utilizes 50 hour intervals (Phase 1 and Phase 2) to inspect high-usage systems and components. At 12 months or 600 flight hours, whichever occurs first, the airplane undergoes a complete (Phase 3) inspection.

Regardless of the inspection method selected, the owner should keep in mind that FAR Part 43 and FAR Part 91 establishes the requirement that properly certified agencies or personnel accomplish all required FAA inspections and most of the manufacturer recommended inspections.

CESSNA CUSTOMER CARE PROGRAM

Specific benefits and provisions of the Cessna Warranty plus other important benefits for you are contained in your Customer Care Program Handbook supplied with your airplane. The Customer Care Program Handbook should be thoroughly reviewed and kept in the airplane at all times.

You will also want to return to your Cessna Service Station either at 50 hours for your first Progressive Care Operation, or at 100 hours for your first 100 hour inspection depending on which program you choose to establish for your airplane. While these important inspections will be performed for you by any Cessna Service Station, in most cases you will prefer to have the Cessna Service Station from whom you purchased the airplane accomplish this work.

PILOT CONDUCTED PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

A certified pilot who owns or operates an airplane not used as an air carrier is authorized by FAR Part 43 to perform limited maintenance on his airplane. Refer to FAR Part 43 for a list of the specific maintenance operations which are allowed.

NOTE

Pilots operating airplanes of other than U.S. registry should refer to the regulations of the country of certification for information on preventive maintenance that may be performed by pilots.

A Maintenance Manual must be obtained prior to performing any preventive maintenance to ensure that proper procedures are followed. Your local Cessna Service Station should be contacted for further information or for required maintenance which must be accomplished by appropriately licensed personnel.

ALTERATIONS OR REPAIRS

It is essential that the FAA be contacted prior to any alterations on the airplane to ensure that airworthiness of the airplane is not violated. Alterations or repairs to the airplane must be accomplished by licensed personnel, utilizing only FAA Approved components and FAA Approved data, such as Cessna Service Bulletins.

GROUND HANDLING

TOWING

The airplane is most easily and safely maneuvered by hand with the tow bar attached to the nose wheel (the tow bar is stowed on the side of the baggage area). When towing with a vehicle, do not exceed the nose gear turning angle of 30° either side of center, or damage to the nose landing gear will result.

CAUTION

REMOVE ANY INSTALLED RUDDER LOCK BEFORE TOWING.

If the airplane is towed or pushed over a rough surface during hangaring, watch that the normal cushioning action of the nose strut does not cause excessive vertical movement of the tail and the resulting contact with low hangar doors or structure. A flat nose tire or deflated strut will also increase tail height.

PARKING

When parking the airplane, head into the wind and set the parking brake. Do not set the parking brake during cold weather when accumulated moisture may freeze the brakes, or when the brakes are overheated. Install the control wheel lock and chock the wheels. In severe weather and high wind conditions, tie the airplane down as outlined in the following paragraph.

TIE-DOWN

Proper tie-down procedure is the best precaution against damage to the parked airplane by gusty or strong winds. To tie-down the airplane securely, proceed as follows:

1. Set the parking brake and install the control wheel lock.
2. Install a surface control lock over the fin and rudder.
3. Tie sufficiently strong ropes or chains (700 pounds tensile strength) to the wing, tail and nose tie-down fittings and secure each rope or chain to a ramp tie-down.
4. Install a pitot tube cover.

JACKING

When a requirement exists to jack the entire airplane off the ground, or when wing jack points are used in the jacking operation, refer to the Maintenance Manual for specific procedures and equipment required.

Individual main gear may be jacked by using the jack pad which is incorporated in the main landing gear strut step bracket. When using the individual gear strut jack pad, flexibility of the gear strut will cause the main wheel to slide inboard as the wheel is raised, tilting the jack. The jack must then be lowered for a second jacking operation. Do not jack both main wheels simultaneously using the individual main gear jack pads.

CAUTION

DO NOT APPLY PRESSURE ON THE ELEVATOR OR HORIZONTAL STABILIZER SURFACES. WHEN PUSHING ON THE TAILCONE, ALWAYS APPLY PRESSURE AT A BULKHEAD TO AVOID BUCKLING THE SKIN.

If nose gear maintenance is required, the nose wheel may be raised off the ground by pressing down on a tailcone bulkhead, just forward of the horizontal stabilizer, and allowing the tail to rest on the tail tie-down ring.

To assist in raising and holding the nose wheel off the ground, ground anchors should be utilized at the tail tie down point.

NOTE

Ensure that the nose will be held off the ground under all conditions by means of suitable stands or supports under weight supporting bulkheads near the nose of the airplane.

LEVELING

Longitudinal leveling of the airplane is accomplished by placing a level on leveling screws located on the left side of the tailcone. Deflate the nose tire and/or lower or raise the nose strut to properly center the bubble in the level. Corresponding points on both upper door sills may be used to level the airplane laterally.

FLYABLE STORAGE

Airplanes placed in non operational storage for a maximum of 30 days or those which receive only intermittent operational use for the first 25 hours are considered in flyable storage status. Every seventh day during these periods, the propeller should be rotated by hand through five revolutions. This action "limbers" the oil and helps prevent any accumulation of corrosion on engine cylinder walls.

WARNING

FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY, CHECK THAT THE IGNITION SWITCH IS OFF, THE THROTTLE IS CLOSED, THE MIXTURE CONTROL IS IN THE IDLE CUT OFF POSITION, AND THE AIRPLANE IS SECURED BEFORE ROTATING THE PROPELLER BY HAND. DO NOT STAND WITHIN THE ARC OF THE PROPELLER BLADES WHILE TURNING THE PROPELLER.

After 30 days, the airplane should be flown for 30 minutes or a ground runup should be made just long enough to produce an oil temperature within the lower green arc range. Excessive ground runup should be avoided.

Engine runup also helps to eliminate excessive accumulations of water in the fuel system and other air spaces in the engine. Keep fuel tanks full to minimize condensation in the tanks. Keep the battery fully charged to prevent the electrolyte from freezing in cold weather. If the airplane is to be stored temporarily, or indefinitely, refer to the Maintenance Manual for proper storage procedures.

SERVICING

In addition to the Preflight Inspection covered in Section 4 of this handbook, complete servicing, inspection and test requirements for your airplane are detailed in the Maintenance Manual. The Maintenance Manual outlines all items which require attention at specific intervals plus those items which require servicing, inspection, and/or testing at special intervals.

Since Cessna Service Stations conduct all service, inspection, and test procedures in accordance with applicable Maintenance Manuals, it is recommended that you contact your local Cessna Service Station concerning these requirements and begin scheduling your airplane for service at the recommended intervals.

Cessna Progressive Care ensures that these requirements are accomplished at the required intervals to comply with the 100 hour or annual inspection as previously covered.

Depending on various flight operations, your local Government Aviation Agency may require additional service, inspections, or tests. For these regulatory requirements, owners should check with local aviation officials where the airplane is being operated.

For quick and ready reference, quantities, materials and specifications for frequently used service items are as follows.

OIL

OIL SPECIFICATION

MIL-L-6082 or SAE J1966 Aviation Grade Straight Mineral Oil: Used when the airplane was delivered from the factory and should be used to replenish the supply during the first 25 hours. This oil should be drained and filter replaced after the first 25 hours of operation. Refill the engine and continue to use until a total of 50 hours has accumulated or oil consumption has stabilized.

MIL-L-22851 or SAE J1899 Aviation Grade Ashless Dispersant Oil: Oil conforming to Textron Lycoming Service Instruction No. 1014, and all revision and supplements thereto, must be used after first 50 hours, or when oil consumption has stabilized.

RECOMMENDED VISCOSITY FOR TEMPERATURE RANGE

Multiviscosity or straight grade oil may be used throughout the year for engine lubrication. Refer to the following table for temperature verses viscosity ranges.

Temperature	MIL-L-6082 or SAE J1966 Straight Mineral Oil SAE Grade	MIL-L-22851 or SAE J1899 Ashless Dispersant SAE Grade
Above 27°C (80°F)	60	60
Above 16°C (60°F)	50	40 or 50
-1°C (30°F) to 32°C (90°F)	40	40
-18°C (0°F) to 21°C (70°F)	30	30, 40 or 20W-40
Below -12°C (10°F)	20	30 or 20W-30
-18°C (0°F) - 32°C (90°F)	20W-50	20W-50 or 15W-50
All Temperatures	---	15W-50 or 20W-50

CAPACITY OF ENGINE SUMP

The engine lubrication system has a total capacity of 9 quarts of oil, with the oil filter accounting for 1 quart of that total. The engine oil sump (crankcase) has a capacity of 8 quarts. The engine must not be operated with less than 5 quarts in the sump. For extended flights, the engine oil level should be at 8 quarts.

OIL AND OIL FILTER CHANGE

After the first 25 hours of operation, drain the engine oil sump and replace the filter. Refill sump with straight mineral oil and use until a total of 50 hours has accumulated or oil consumption has stabilized; then change to ashless dispersant oil. Ashless dispersant oil (and oil filter) should then be changed at time intervals set forth by the engine manufacturer.

NOTE

During the first 25 hour oil and filter change, a general inspection of the overall engine compartment is required. Items which are not normally checked during a preflight inspection should be given special attention. Hoses, metal lines and fittings should be inspected for signs of oil and fuel leaks, and checked for abrasions, chafing, security, proper routing and support, and evidence of deterioration. Inspect the intake and exhaust systems for cracks, evidence of leakage, and security of attachment. Engine controls and linkages should be checked for freedom of movement through their full range, security of attachment and evidence of wear. Inspect wiring for security, chafing, burning, defective insulation, loose or broken terminals, heat deterioration, and corroded terminals. Check the alternator belt in accordance with Maintenance Manual instructions, and retighten if necessary. A periodic check of these items during subsequent servicing operations is recommended.

FUEL

APPROVED FUEL GRADES (AND COLORS)

100LL Grade Aviation Fuel (Blue).
100 Grade Aviation Fuel (Green).

NOTE

Isopropyl alcohol or diethylene glycol monomethyl ether (DIEGME) may be added to the fuel supply in quantities not to exceed 1% (alcohol) or 0.15% (DIEGME) of total volume. Refer to Fuel Additives in later paragraphs for additional information.

FUEL CAPACITY

56.0 U.S. Gallons Total: 28.0 U.S. Gallons per tank.

NOTE

To ensure maximum fuel capacity when refueling and minimize cross feeding, the fuel selector valve should be placed in either the LEFT or RIGHT position and the airplane parked in a wings level, normal ground attitude. Refer to Figure 1-1 for a definition of normal ground attitude.

Service the fuel system after each flight, and keep fuel tanks full to minimize condensation in the tanks.

FUEL ADDITIVES

Strict adherence to recommended preflight draining instructions as called for in Section 4 will eliminate any free water accumulations from the tank sumps. While small amounts of water may still remain in solution in the gasoline, it will normally be consumed and go unnoticed in the operation of the engine.

2. An alternate method that may be used is to premix the complete alcohol dosage with some fuel in a separate clean container (approximately 2-3 gallon capacity) and then transferring this mixture to the tank prior to the fuel operation.

Diethylene glycol monomethyl ether (DiEGME) compound must be carefully mixed with the fuel in concentrations between 0.10% (minimum) and 0.15% (maximum) of total fuel volume. Refer to Figure 8-1 for a DiEGME-to-fuel mixing chart.

CAUTION

ANTI-ICING ADDITIVE IS DANGEROUS TO HEALTH WHEN BREATHED AND/OR ABSORBED INTO THE SKIN.

CAUTION

MIXING OF DiEGME WITH FUEL IS EXTREMELY IMPORTANT. A CONCENTRATION IN EXCESS OF THAT RECOMMENDED (0.15% BY VOLUME MAXIMUM) MAY RESULT IN DETRIMENTAL EFFECTS TO THE FUEL TANK SEALANT, AND DAMAGE TO O-RINGS AND SEALS USED IN THE FUEL SYSTEM AND ENGINE COMPONENTS. A CONCENTRATION OF LESS THAN THAT RECOMMENDED (0.10% BY TOTAL VOLUME MINIMUM) WILL RESULT IN INEFFECTIVE TREATMENT. USE ONLY BLENDING EQUIPMENT THAT IS RECOMMENDED BY THE MANUFACTURER TO OBTAIN PROPER PROPORTIONING.

Prolonged storage of the airplane will result in a water buildup in the fuel which "leeches out" the additive. An indication of this is when an excessive amount of water accumulates in the fuel tank sumps. The concentration can be checked using a differential refractometer. It is imperative that the technical manual for the differential refractometer be followed explicitly when checking the additive concentration.

FUEL CONTAMINATION

Fuel contamination is usually the result of foreign material present in the fuel system, and may consist of water, rust, sand, dirt, microbes or bacterial growth. In addition, additives that are not compatible with fuel or fuel system components can cause the fuel to become contaminated.

Before each flight and after each refueling, use a clear sampler cup and drain at least a cupful of fuel from each fuel tank drain location and from the fuel strainer quick drain valve to determine if contaminants are present, and to ensure the airplane has been fueled with the proper grade of fuel.

If contamination is detected, drain all fuel drain points including the fuel reservoir and fuel selector quick drain valves and then gently rock the wings and lower the tail to the ground to move any additional contaminants to the sampling points. Take repeated samples from all fuel drain points until all contamination has been removed. If, after repeated sampling, evidence of contamination still exists, the airplane should not be flown. Tanks should be drained and system purged by qualified maintenance personnel. All evidence of contamination must be removed before further flight. If the airplane has been serviced with the improper fuel grade, defuel completely and refuel with the correct grade. Do not fly the airplane with contaminated or unapproved fuel.

In addition, Owners/Operators who are not acquainted with a particular fixed base operator should be assured that the fuel supply has been checked for contamination and is properly filtered before allowing the airplane to be serviced. Fuel tanks should be kept full between flights, provided weight and balance considerations will permit, to reduce the possibility of water condensing on the walls of partially filled tanks.

To further reduce the possibility of contaminated fuel, routine maintenance of the fuel system should be performed in accordance with the airplane Maintenance Manual. Only the proper fuel, as recommended in this handbook, should be used, and fuel additives should not be used unless approved by Cessna and the Federal Aviation Administration.

LANDING GEAR

Consult the following table for servicing information on the landing gear.

COMPONENT	SERVICING CRITERIA
Nose Wheel (5.00-5, 6-Ply Rated Tire)	45.0 PSI
Main Wheel (6.00-6, 6-Ply Rated Tire)	38.0 PSI
Brakes	MIL-H-5606
Nose Gear Shock Strut	MIL-H-5606; 45.0 PSI *

* Keep strut filled with MIL-H-5606 hydraulic fluid per filling instructions placard, and with no load on the strut, inflate with air to 45.0 PSI. Do not over inflate.

CLEANING AND CARE

WINDSHIELD AND WINDOWS

The plastic windshield and windows should be cleaned with an aircraft windshield cleaner. Apply the cleaner sparingly with soft cloths, and rub with moderate pressure until all dirt, oil scum and bug stains are removed. Allow the cleaner to dry, then wipe it off with soft flannel cloths.

CAUTION

NEVER USE GASOLINE, BENZENE, ALCOHOL, ACETONE, FIRE EXTINGUISHER, ANTI-ICE FLUID, LACQUER THINNER OR GLASS CLEANER TO CLEAN THE PLASTIC. THESE MATERIALS WILL ATTACK THE PLASTIC AND MAY CAUSE IT TO CRAZE.

If a windshield cleaner is not available, the plastic can be cleaned with soft cloths moistened with Stoddard solvent to remove oil and grease.

Follow by carefully washing with a mild detergent and plenty of water. Rinse thoroughly, then dry with a clean moist chamois. Do not rub the plastic with a dry cloth since this builds up an electrostatic charge which attracts dust. Waxing with a good commercial wax will finish the cleaning job. A thin, even coat of wax, polished out by hand with clean soft flannel cloths, will fill in minor scratches and help prevent further scratching.

Do not use a canvas cover on the windshield unless freezing rain or sleet is anticipated since the cover may scratch the plastic surface.

PAINTED SURFACES

The painted exterior surfaces of your new Cessna have a durable, long lasting finish.

Generally, the painted surfaces can be kept bright by washing with water and mild soap, followed by a rinse with water and drying with cloths or a chamois. Harsh or abrasive soaps or detergents which cause corrosion or scratches should never be used. Remove stubborn oil and grease with a cloth moistened with Stoddard solvent. Take special care to make sure that the exterior graphics are not touched by the solvent. For complete care of exterior graphics refer to the Maintenance Manual.

To seal any minor surface chips or scratches and protect against corrosion, the airplane should be waxed regularly with a good automotive wax applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. If the airplane is operated in a seacoast or other salt water environment, it must be washed and waxed more frequently to assure adequate protection. Special care should be taken to seal around rivet heads and skin laps, which are the areas most susceptible to corrosion. A heavier coating of wax on the leading edges of the wings and tail and on the cowl nose cap and propeller spinner will help reduce the abrasion encountered in these areas. Reapplication of wax will generally be necessary after cleaning with soap solution or after chemical de-icing operations.

When the airplane is parked outside in cold climates and it is necessary to remove ice before flight, care should be taken to protect the painted surfaces during ice removal with chemical liquids. Isopropyl alcohol will satisfactorily remove ice accumulations without damaging the paint. However, keep the isopropyl alcohol away from the windshield and cabin windows since it will attack the plastic and may cause it to craze.

PROPELLER CARE

Preflight inspection of propeller blades for nicks, and wiping them occasionally with an oily cloth to clean off grass and bug stains will assure long blade life. Small nicks on the propeller, particularly near the tips and on the leading edges, should be dressed out as soon as possible since these nicks produce stress concentrations, and if ignored, may result in cracks or failure of the propeller blade. Never use an alkaline cleaner on the blades; remove grease and dirt with Stoddard solvent.

ENGINE CARE

The engine may be cleaned, using a suitable solvent, in accordance with instructions in the airplane Maintenance Manual. Most efficient cleaning is done using a spray type cleaner. Before spray cleaning, ensure that protection is afforded for components which might be adversely affected by the solvent. Refer to the Maintenance Manual for proper lubrication of controls and components after engine cleaning. The induction air filter should be replaced when its condition warrants, not to exceed 500 hours.

INTERIOR CARE

To remove dust and loose dirt from the upholstery and carpet, clean the interior regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Blot up any spilled liquid promptly with cleansing tissue or rags. Do not pat the spot; press the blotting material firmly and hold it for several seconds. Continue blotting until no more liquid is taken up. Scrape off sticky materials with a dull knife, then spot clean the area.

Oily spots may be cleaned with household spot removers, used sparingly. Before using any solvent, read the instructions on the container and test it on an obscure place on the fabric to be cleaned. Never saturate the fabric with a volatile solvent; it may damage the padding and backing materials.

Soiled upholstery and carpet may be cleaned with foam type detergent, used according to the manufacturer's instructions. To minimize wetting the fabric, keep the foam as dry as possible and remove it with a vacuum cleaner.

For complete information related to interior cleaning, refer to the Maintenance Manual.

SUPPLEMENT
REVISION

MODEL 172S

PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK
AND FAA APPROVED
AIRPLANE FLIGHT MANUAL

REVISION 10

7 JANUARY 2004

PART NUMBER:

172SUSLOG10

INSERT THE FOLLOWING PAGES INTO THE SUPPLEMENT SECTION OF THE PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK

SUPPLEMENTS

INTRODUCTION

The supplements in this section contain expanded operational procedures for both standard and optional equipment installed in the airplane. Operators should refer to each supplement to ensure that all limitations and procedures appropriate for their airplane are observed.

A Log Of Approved Supplements is provided, for convenience only, beginning on page Log 1 and is a numerical list of all supplements applicable to this airplane by name, number and revision level. This log should be used as a checklist to ensure all applicable supplements have been placed in the Pilot's Operating Handbook (POH). Supplements may be removed from the POH provided the equipment is not installed on the airplane. If equipment is installed on the airplane, however, the supplement(s) must be retained and updated as revisions to each supplement are issued.

Each individual supplement contains its own Log of Effective Pages. This log lists the page number and effective date of every page in the supplement. The log also lists the dates on which revisions to the supplement occurred. Additionally, the part number of the supplement provides information on the revision level. Refer to the following example:

172SPHUS-S1-04

- Revision Level of Supplement
- Supplement Number
- Type of Airplane Supplement Applies To

LOG OF APPROVED SUPPLEMENTS

NOTE

IT IS THE AIRPLANE OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITY TO ASSURE THAT HE OR SHE HAS THE LATEST REVISION TO EACH SUPPLEMENT OF A PILOT'S OPERATING HANDBOOK AND THE LATEST ISSUED "LOG OF APPROVED SUPPLEMENTS." THIS "LOG OF APPROVED SUPPLEMENTS" WAS THE LATEST REVISION AS OF THE DATE IT WAS SHIPPED BY CESSNA; HOWEVER, SOME CHANGES MAY HAVE OCCURRED AND THE OWNER SHOULD VERIFY THIS IS THE LATEST, MOST UP-TO-DATE VERSION BY CONTACTING CESSNA CUSTOMER SUPPORT AT (316) 517-5800.

SUPP. NO.	SUPPLEMENT NAME	REVISION LEVEL	EQUIPMENT INSTALLED
1	Bendix/King KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A Indicator Head	0	✓
2	Bendix/King KT 76C Transponder with Blind Encoder	0	✓
3	Bendix/King KMA 26 Audio Selector Panel	1	✓
4	Pointer Model 3000-11 or Model 4000-11 Emergency Locator Transmitter (ELT)	2	✓
5	Bendix/King KLN 89B Global Positioning System (GPS)	2	
6	Bendix/King KR 87 Automatic Direction Finder (ADF)	1	✓
7	Bendix/King KAP 140 Single Axis Autopilot	2	
8	Winterization Kit	0	✓
9	Davtron Model 803 Clock/OAT	0	✓
10	Bendix/King KLN 89 Global Positioning System (GPS)	1	

[illegible]

LOG OF APPROVED SUPPLEMENTS

SUPP. NO.	SUPPLEMENT NAME	REVISION LEVEL	EQUIPMENT INSTALLED
12	Canadian Supplement	0	✓
13	Bendix/King KCS-55A Slaved Compass System with KI-525A Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI)	1	✓
14	Reserved		
15	Bendix/King KAP 140 2 Axis Autopilot	5	✓
16	Reserved		
17	Reserved		
18	Reserved		
19	Bendix/King KLN 94 Global Positioning System	4	✓
20	Bendix/King KMA 26 Audio Selector Panel	0	
21	Bendix/King KMD 550 Multi-Function Display	0	
22	12 Volt Cabin Power System	0	
24	Astrotech Model TC-2 Clock/OAT/Volt Indicator	0	
25	Bendix/King KX 165A VHF NAV/COM	0	
26	Bendix/King KDR 510 Flight Information Services (FIS)	0	

Cessna

A Textron Company

Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

CESSNA MODEL 172S

AIRPLANES 172S8001 AND ON

SUPPLEMENT 1

BENDIX/KING KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A INDICATOR HEAD

SERIAL NO. [illegible]

REGISTRATION NO. ________

This supplement must be inserted into Section 9 of the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual.

FAA APPROVAL

FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J

The Cessna Aircraft Co

Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1

[illegible] Executive Engineer

Date: [illegible] 1998

Member of GAMA

8 July 1998

[illegible]

SUPPLEMENT 1

BENDIX/KING KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A INDICATOR HEAD

The following Log of Effective Pages provides the date of issue for original and revised pages, as well as a listing of all pages in the Supplement. Pages which are affected by the current revision will carry the date of that revision.

Revision Level	Date of Issue
0 (Original)	July 8, 1998

LOG OF EFFECTIVITY PAGES

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
Title (S1-1)	July 8/98	S1-9	July 8/98
S1-2	July 8/98	S1-10	July 8/98
S1-3	July 8/98	S1-11	July 8/98
S1-4	July 8/98	S1-12	July 8/98
S1-5	July 8/98	S1-13	July 8/98
S1-6	July 8/98	S1-14	July 8/98
S1-7	July 8/98	S1-15	July 8/98
S1-8	July 8/98	S1-16 Blank	July 8/98

SERVICE BULLETIN CONFIGURATION LIST

The following is a list of Service Bulletins that are applicable to the operation of the airplane, and have been incorporated into this supplement. This list contains only those Service Bulletins that are currently active.

Number	Title	Airplane Unit Effectivity	Revision Incorporation	Incorporated In Airplane

SUPPLEMENT

BENDIX/KING KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A INDICATOR HEAD

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Bendix/King KX 155A VHF Nav/Comm, shown in Figure 1, consists of a panel-mounted receiver-transmitter and a KI 208 or KI 209A Indicator.

The set includes a 760-channel VHF communications receiver-transmitter and a 200-channel VHF navigation receiver. A 40-channel glide slope receiver is also included if the KI 209A indicator is used. The communications receiver-transmitter receives and transmits signals between 118.00 and 136.975 MHz with 25-kHz spacing. Optional 8.33 kHz (2280 channel) Comm is available. The navigation receiver receives VOR and localizer signals between 108.00 and 117.95 MHz in 50-kHz steps. The glide slope receiver is automatically tuned when a localizer frequency is selected. The circuits required to interpret the VOR and localizer signals are also an integral part of the Nav receiver.

Large self-dimming gas discharge readouts display both the communications and navigation operating frequencies. The KX-155A's "flip-flop" preselect feature enables you to store one frequency in the standby display while operating on another and then interchange them instantly with the touch of a button. Both the active (COMM) and the standby (STBY) frequencies may be displayed at all times and are stored in nonvolatile memory without drain on the aircraft battery. KX 155A has 32 programmable comm channels, a stuck microphone alert and transmitter shutdown, Bearing To/From radial mode, course deviation indicator mode and an elapsed timer mode.

The Comm portion incorporates an automatic squelch. To override the automatic squelch, the Comm volume control knob is pulled out. Push the knob back in to reactivate the automatic squelch. A "T" will be displayed during transmit and "R" during valid signal reception.

The Nav portion uses the pull out feature of the Nav volume control to receive the Nav signal Ident. Pull the volume control knob out to hear the Ident signal plus voice. Push the knob in to attenuate the Ident signal and still hear Nav voice.

All controls for the Nav/Comm, except those for navigation course selection, are mounted on the front panel of the receiver-transmitter. Control lighting is provided by NAV/COMM interior lighting and the instrument panel flood lighting system. Operation and description of the audio selector panel used in conjunction with this radio is shown and described in Supplement 3 in this section.

NOTE

The unit has a stuck microphone alert feature. If the microphone is keyed continuously for greater than 30 seconds, the transmitter stops transmitting and the active Comm frequency flashes to alert the pilot of the stuck mic condition.

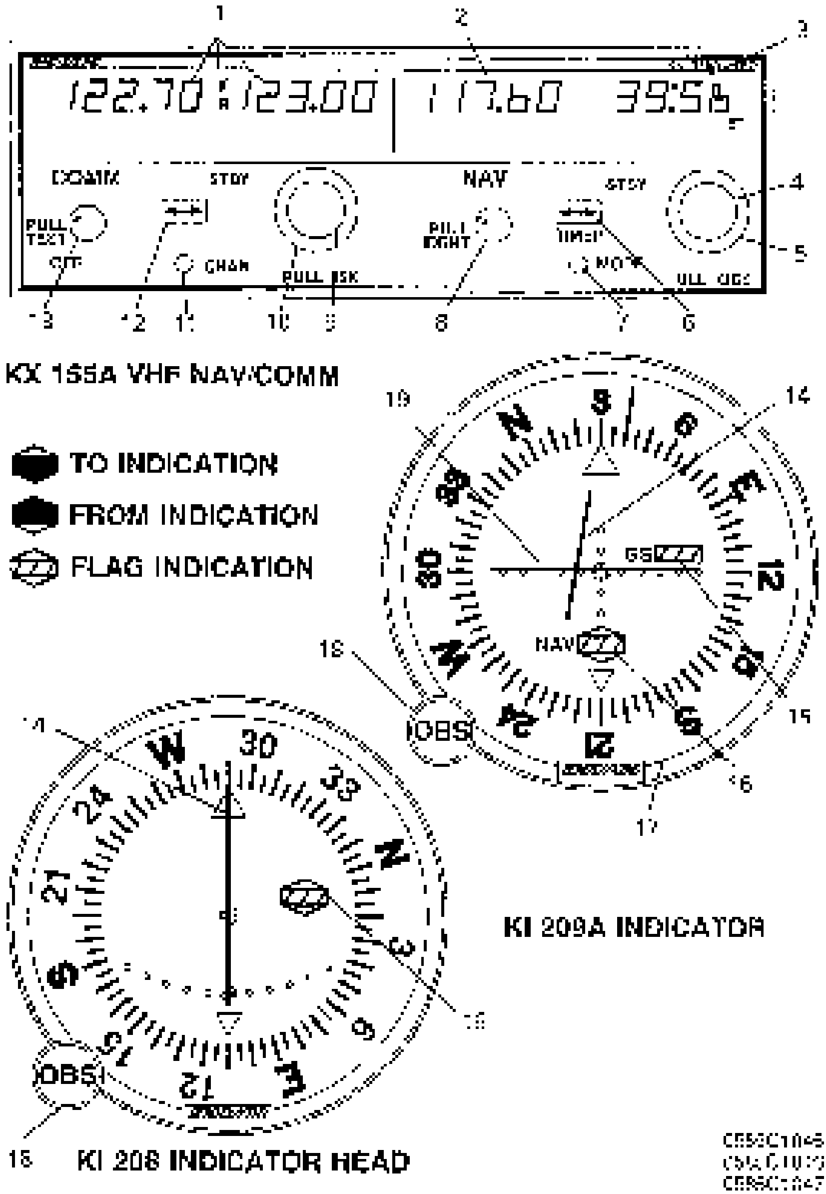
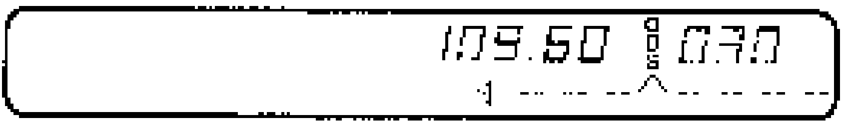
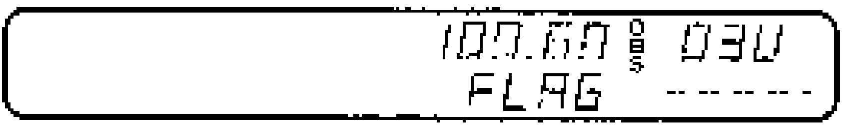


Figure 1. Bendix/King KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A Indicator Head (Sheet 1 of 7)

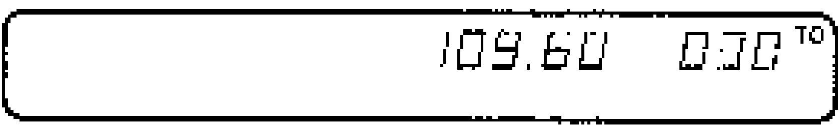
NAV FUNCTION DISPLAYS



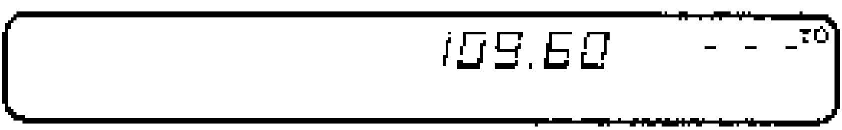
VOR MODE: ACTIVE/BEARING, CDI FORMAT



VOR MODE: ACTIVE/BEARING, FLAG DISPLAY



VOR MODE: ACTIVE "BEARING TO" FUNCTION DISPLAY



VOR MODE: ACTIVE/BEARING, FLAG DISPLAY

LOCALIZER MODE: FREQUENCY/CDI FORMAT

Figure 1. Bendix/King KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A Indicator Head (Sheet 2 of 7)

1. OPERATING COMM FREQUENCY DISPLAY -- Displays COMM ACTIVE and COMM STANDBY frequencies with a "T" between them to indicate TRANSMIT and an "R" to indicate RECEIVE modes of operation.

2. OPERATING NAV FREQUENCY DISPLAY -- The right portion of the display is allocated to NAV receiver ACTIVE and STANDBY information. The frequency channeling is similar to the COMM when operating in the frequency mode. The NAV ACTIVE and STANDBY frequencies are stored in the memory on power down and return on power up.

3. NAV STANDBY/OBS/Bearing/Radial/Timer Display -- The right side of the NAV display is controlled by the MODE SELECTOR BUTTON (see #7 below). With an active VOR frequency, this portion of the display shows the STANDBY frequency, OBS setting for the internal CDI, the bearing to the VOR station, radial from the VOR station, or a count-up/count-down timer. With an active localizer frequency, this portion of the display shows the standby frequency, the letters "LOC", or count-up/count-down timer.

4. NAV FREQUENCY SELECTOR KNOB (SMALL) -- Operates in 50 kHz steps. The NAV receiver's lower and upper frequency limits are 108.00 MHz and 117.95 MHz. Exceeding the upper limit of frequency band will automatically return to the lower limit and vice versa. A clockwise rotation will increase (inc) the previous frequency while a counterclockwise rotation will decrease (dec) the previous frequency.

5. NAV FREQUENCY SELECTOR KNOB (LARGE) -- Operates in 1 MHz steps. The frequency inc/dec operates the STANDBY frequency display. A clockwise rotation will increase the previous frequency while a counterclockwise rotation will decrease the previous frequency. Exceeding the upper limit of the frequency band will automatically return to the lower limit and vice versa.

Figure 1. Bendix/King KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A Indicator Head (Sheet 3 of 7)

6. NAV/FREQUENCY TRANSFER BUTTON (⟵⟶) -- Interchanges the NAV Active and STANDBY frequencies. Depressing the NAV frequency transfer button for 2 seconds or more will cause the display to go into the ACTIVE ENTRY mode. Only the ACTIVE frequency will be displayed and it can be directly changed by using the NAV inc/dec knobs. The display will return to the ACTIVE/STANDBY mode when the NAV frequency transfer button is pushed.

7. MODE SELECTOR BUTTON -- Depressing the mode button will cause the NAV display to go from the ACTIVE/STANDBY format to the ACTIVE/CDI (Course Deviation Indicator) format. In the CDI mode, the frequency inc/dec knob (pushed in) channels the ACTIVE frequency. When the ACTIVE window is tuned to a VOR frequency, the standby frequency area is replaced by a three digit OBS (Omni Bearing Selector) display. The desired OBS course can be selected by pulling out the inner NAV frequency knob and turning it. This OBS display is independent of any OBS course selected on an external CDI. An "OBS" in the middle of the NAV display will flash while the inner NAV frequency knob is pulled out. The CDI is displayed on the line below the frequency/OBS. When the ACTIVE window is tuned to a localizer frequency, the standby frequency area is replaced by "LOC". When the received signal is too weak to ensure accuracy the display will "FLAG".

   Depressing the mode button again will cause the NAV display to go from the ACTIVE/CDI format to the ACTIVE/BEARING format. In the BEARING mode, the frequency inc/dec knob channels the ACTIVE frequency window. Depressing the frequency transfer button will cause the ACTIVE frequency to be placed in blind storage and the STANDBY frequency (in blind storage) to be displayed in the ACTIVE window display. In bearing mode, the right hand window of the NAV display shows the bearing TO the station. When a too weak or invalid VOR signal is received the display flags (dashes).

Figure 1. Bendix/King KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A Indicator Head (Sheet 4 of 7)

Another push of the mode button will cause the NAV display to go from the ACTIVE/BEARING format to the ACTIVE/RADIAL format. In the RADIAL mode, the frequency inc/dec knobs channel the ACTIVE frequency window and depressing the frequency transfer button will cause the ACTIVE frequency to be placed in blind storage and the STANDBY frequency (in blind storage) to be displayed in the ACTIVE window display. In radial mode of operation, the right hand window of NAV display shows the radial FROM the station. When a too weak or invalid VOR signal is received the display flags (dashes).

Another push of the mode button will cause the unit to go into the TIMER mode. When the unit is turned on, the elapsed timer (ET) begins counting upwards from zero. The timer can be stopped and reset to zero by pushing the NAV frequency transfer button for 2 seconds or more causing the ET on the display to flash. In this state, the timer can be set as a countdown timer or the elapsed timer can be restarted. The countdown timer is set by using the NAV frequency inc/dec knobs to set the desired time and then pushing the NAV frequency transfer button to start the timer. The large knob selects minutes, the small knob in the "in" position selects 10 second intervals, and the small knob in the "out" position selects individual seconds. After the countdown timer reaches zero, the counter will begin to count upwards indefinitely while flashing for the first 15 seconds. When the elapsed timer is reset to zero it may be restarted again by momentarily pushing the NAV frequency transfer button.

8. NAV/VOLUME CONTROL (PULL IDENT) -- Adjusts volume of navigation receiver audio. When the knob is pulled out, the ident signal plus voice may be heard. The volume of voice/ident can be adjusted by turning this knob.

Figure 1. Bendix/King KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A Indicator Head (Sheet 5 of 7)

9. COMM FREQUENCY SELECTOR KNOB (INNER) -- This smaller knob is designed to change the indicated frequency in steps of 50-kHz when it is pushed in, and in 25-kHz steps when it is pulled out. For 8.33 kHz versions, channels are incremented in 25 kHz steps with the knob pushed in and 8.33 kHz with the knob pulled out.

10. COMM FREQUENCY SELECTOR KNOB (OUTER) -- The outer, larger selector knob is used to change the MHz portion of the frequency display. At either band-edge of the 118-136 MHz frequency spectrum, an offscale rotation will wrap the display around to the other frequency band-edge (i.e., 136 MHz advances to 118 MHz).

11. CHANNEL BUTTON -- Pressing the CHAN button for 2 or more seconds will cause the unit to enter the channel program (PG) mode. Upon entering the channel program mode, the channel number will flash indicating that it can be programmed. The desired channel can be selected by turning the comm kHz knob. The channel frequency can be entered by pushing the comm transfer button which will cause the standby frequency to flash. The comm frequency knobs are then used to enter the desired frequency. If dashes (located between 136 MHz and 118 MHz) are entered instead of a frequency, the corresponding channel is skipped in channel selection mode. Additional channels may be programmed by pressing the COMM transfer button and using the same procedure. The channel information is saved by pushing the CHAN button which will also cause the unit to return to the previous frequency entry mode.

The channel selection mode (CH) can then be entered by momentarily pushing the CHAN button. The comm frequency knobs can be used to select the desired channel. The unit will automatically default to the previous mode if no channel is selected within 2 seconds after entering the channel selection mode. The unit is placed in the transmit mode by depressing a mic button.

Figure 1. Bendix/King KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A Indicator Head (Sheet 6 of 7)

12. COMM FREQUENCY TRANSFER BUTTON (←→) -- Interchanges the frequencies in the USE and STANDBY displays. To tune the radio to the desired operating frequency, the desired frequency must be entered into the standby display and then the transfer button must be pushed. This will trade the contents of the active and standby displays. The operating frequency can also be entered by accessing the ACTIVE ENTRY (direct tune) mode which is done by pushing the COMM TRANSFER button for 2 or more seconds. In the direct tune mode, only the active part of the display is visible. The desired frequency can be directly entered into the display. Push the COMM TRANSFER button again to return to the active/standby display.
The transceiver is always tuned to the frequency appearing in the ACTIVE display. It is, therefore, possible to have two different frequencies stored in the ACTIVE and STANDBY displays and to change back and forth between them at the simple push of the transfer button.

13. COMM VOLUME CONTROL (OFF/PULL/TEST) -- Rotate the VOL knob clockwise from the OFF position. Pull the VOL knob out and adjust for desired listening level. Push the VOL knob back in to actuate the automatic squelch. The VOL knob may also be pulled out to hear particularly weak signals.

14. VOR/Localizer Needle or CDI needle.

15. Glideslope Flag

16. TO-FROM-NAV FLAG

17. Azimuth Card

18. OBS Knob

19. Glideslope Needle

Figure 1. Bendix/King KX 155A VHF NAV/COMM with KI 208 or KI 209A Indicator Head (Sheet 7 of 7)

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when this avionic equipment is installed. However, if the frequency readouts fail, the radio will remain operational on the last frequency selected. If either frequency transfer button is pressed and held while power is applied to the unit, the unit wakes up with 120.00 MHz in the COMM use frequency and 110.00 MHz in the NAV active frequency, with both COMM and NAV in the active entry mode. This will aid the pilot in blind tuning the radio.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

COMMUNICATION RECEIVER-TRANSMITTER OPERATION:

1. OFF/PULL/TEST Volume Control -- Turn clockwise; pull out and adjust to desired audio level; push control back in to activate the automatic squelch.
2. MIC Selector Switch (on audio control panel) -- SET to COMM 1.
3. SPEAKER Selector (on audio control panel) -- SET to desired mode.
4. COMM Frequency Selector Knobs -- Select desired operating frequency.
5. COMM Transfer Button -- PRESS to transfer desired frequency from the STBY display into the COMM display.

6. Mic Button:
   a. To transmit -- Press button and speak in microphone.

NOTE

During COMM transmission, a lighted "T" will appear between the "COMM" and "STBY" displays to indicate that the transceiver is operating in the transmit mode.

   b. To Receive -- RELEASE mike button.

NAVIGATION RECEIVER OPERATION:

1. NAV Frequency Selector Knobs -- SELECT desired operating frequency in "STBY" display.
2. NAV TRANSFER BUTTON -- PRESS to transfer desired frequency from the "STBY" display into the "NAV" display.
3. Speaker Selector (on audio control panel) -- SET to desired mode..
4. NAV Volume Control --
   a. ADJUST to desired audio level.
   b. PULL out to identify station

VOR OPERATION:

Channel the NAV Receiver to the desired VOR and monitor the audio to positively identify the station. To select an OBS course, turn the OBS knob to set the desired course under the lubber line. When a signal is received, the NAV flag will pull out of view and show a "TO" or "FROM" flag as appropriate for the selected course.

LOC OPERATION

Localizer circuitry is energized when the NAV Receiver is channeled to an ILS frequency. Monitor the LOC audio and positively identify the station. The NAV flag will be out of view when the signal is of sufficient strength to be usable.

GLIDESLOPE OPERATION

The glideslope receiver is automatically channeled when a localizer frequency is selected. A separate warning flag is provided to indicate usable signal conditions.

PILOT CONFIGURATION

This mode can be accessed by pressing and holding the NAV Mode Button for more than 2 seconds and then pressing the Nav Frequency Transfer Button for an additional 2 seconds, while continuing to hold the NAV Mode Button. When the Pilot Config Mode is entered the unit will show the "SWRV" mnemonic which is the unit software revision level. Adjustment pages can be accessed by MODE button presses.

The pilot may adjust two parameters in the pilot configuration, the display minimum brightness and sidetone volume level. Minimum Brightness (BRIM) will have a range of 0-255. The dimmest is 0 and the brightest is 255. Sidetone volume level is adjusted when SIDL is displayed. Values from 0-255 may be selected with 0 being least volume, 255 being the greatest.

Adjustment	Mnemonic	Min Level	Max Level
Software Revision Number	SWRV	- - -	- - -
Minimum Display Brightness	BRIM	0	255
Sidetone Level	SIDL	0	255

Subsequent presses of the MODE button sequences through SWRV, BRIM, SIDE, and then back to SWRV.

Pressing the NAV Transfer Button momentarily exits Pilot configuration mode. The NAV returns to its pre-Pilot Config state with the new brightness and sidetone levels stored in nonvolatile memory.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna, or several related antennas, may result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

Cessna

Pilot's Operating Handbook and
FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

CESSNA MODEL 172S

AIRPLANES 172S8001 AND ON

SUPPLEMENT 2

BENDIX/KING KT 76C
TRANSPONDER WITH BLIND ENCODER

SERIAL NO. ____________________

REGISTRATION NO. ____________________

This supplement must be inserted into Section 9 of the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual.

FAA APPROVAL
FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J
The Cessna Aircraft Co
Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1
[illegible] Executive Engineer
Date: [illegible], 1998

Member of GAMA

8 July 1998

172SPHUS-S2-00

SUPPLEMENT 2

BENDIX/KING KT 76C TRANSPONDER with BLIND ENCODER

The following Log of Effective Pages provides the date of issue for original and revised pages, as well as a listing of all pages in the Supplement. Pages which are affected by the current revision will carry the date of that revision.

Revision Level	Date of Issue
0 (Original)	July 8, 1998

LOG OF EFFECTIVITY PAGES

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
Title (S2-1)	July 8/98	S2-6	July 8/98
S2-2	July 8/98	S2-7	July 8/98
S2-3	July 8/98	S2-8	July 8/98
S2-4	July 8/98	S2-9	July 8/98
S2-5	July 8/98	S2-10 Blank	July 8/98

SERVICE BULLETIN CONFIGURATION LIST

The following is a list of Service Bulletins that are applicable to the operation of the airplane, and have been incorporated into this supplement. This list contains only those Service Bulletins that are currently active.

Number	Title	Airplane Unit Effectivity	Revision Incorporation	Incorporated In Airplane

SUPPLEMENT

BENDIX/KING KT 76C TRANPONDER with BLIND ENCODER

SECTION 1

GENERAL

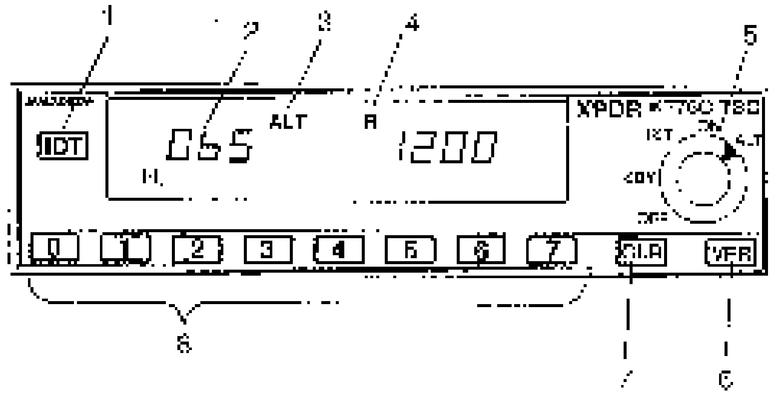
The Bendix/King Transponder (Type KT 76C), shown in Figure 1, is the airborne component of an Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS). The transponder enables the ATC ground controller to "see" and identify more readily the aircraft on the radarscope. The blind encoder (SSD120-20) (also shown in Figure 1) enables the transponder to automatically report aircraft altitude to ATC.

The Bendix/King Transponder system consists of a panel-mounted unit and an externally-mounted antenna. The transponder receives interrogating pulse signals on 1030 MHz and transmits coded pulse-train reply signals on 1090 MHz. It is capable of replying to Mode A (aircraft identification) and also to Mode C (altitude reporting) interrogations on a selective reply basis on any of 4096 information code selections. When a panel-mounted SSD120-20 Blind Encoder (not part of KT 76C Transponder system) is included in the avionic configuration, the transponder can provide altitude reporting in 100-foot increments between -1000 and +20,000 feet.

The KT 76C features microprocessor and LSI (Large Scale Integrated) control. Mode and code selection are performed using the rotary knob and numeric buttons and all functions including the flight level altitude are presented on a gas discharge display. All display segments are automatically dimmed by a photocell type sensor.

A VFR programming sequence, described in Section 4, allows the pilot to preprogram any single code such as "1200" into the KT 76C. Pressing the VFR button instantly returns the KT 76C to the preprogrammed code without having to manually enter "1200".

All Bendix/King Transponder operating controls are located on the front panel of the unit. Functions of the operating controls are described in Figure 1.



1. IDENT BUTTON (IDT) - When depressed, selects special identifier pulse to be transmitted with transponder reply to effect immediate identification of the airplane on the ground controller's display. ("R" will illuminate steadily for approximately 18 seconds. Button illumination is controlled by the avionic light dimming rheostat.

2. ALTITUDE DISPLAY - Displays the pressure altitude on the left side of the display. The display is in hundreds of feet. "FL" is annunciated to indicate Flight Level altitude. Flight Level is a term to indicate that the altitude is not true altitude, but barometric altitude which is not corrected for local pressure. For Example, "FL-040" corresponds to an altitude of 4000 feet, meaning sea level pressure of 29.92 inches of mercury.

   The Flight Level altitude is only displayed when the altitude reporting is enabled, i.e. in Altitude mode. If an invalid code from the altimeter is detected dashes will appear in the altitude window. Altitude reporting is disabled if the altitude window is blank or has dashes.

Figure 1. Bendix/King KT 76C Transponder with Blind Encoder
(Sheet 1 of 2)

3. MODE ANNUNCIATORS - Displays the operating mode of the transponder.

4. REPLY INDICATOR (R) - "R" is illuminated momentarily when the transponder is replying to a valid interrogation and during the 18 ± 2 seconds following the initiation of an Ident.

5. MODE SELECTOR KNOB - Controls application of power and selects transponder operating mode as follows:

   OFF - Turns set off.

   SBY - Turns set on for standby power and code selection. "SBY" is annunciated.

   TST - Self-test function. The transmitter is disabled. All display segments will illuminate.

   ON - Turns set on and enables transponder to transmit Mode A (aircraft identification) reply pulses. ON is annunciated.

   ALT - Turns set on and enables transponder to transmit either Mode A (aircraft identification) reply pulses and Mode C (altitude reporting) pulses selected automatically by the interrogating signal. ALT is annunciated.

6. VFR CODE BUTTON (VFR) - Pressing the VFR Button will cause a pre-programmed Mode A reply code to supersede whatever Mode A reply code was previously in use. Button illumination is controlled by the RADIO LT dimming rheostat.

7. CLEAR BUTTON (CLR) -- Pressing the CLR button will delete the last Mode A code digit entered.

8. NUMERIC KEYS 0-7 - Selects assigned Mode A reply code. The new code will be transmitted after a 5-second delay.

Figure 1. Bendix/King KT 76C Transponder with Blind Encoder (Sheet 2 of 2)

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

TO TRANSMIT AN EMERGENCY SIGNAL:

1. Mode Selector Knob -- ALT.
2. Numeric Keys 0-7 -- SELECT 7700 operating code.

TO TRANSMIT A SIGNAL REPRESENTING LOSS OF ALL COMMUNICATIONS (WHEN IN A CONTROLLED ENVIRONMENT):

1. Mode Selector Knob -- ALT.
2. Numeric Keys 0-7 -- SELECT 7600 operating code.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

BEFORE TAKEOFF:

1. Mode Selector Knob -- SBY.

TO TRANSMIT MODE A (AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION) CODES IN FLIGHT:

1. Numeric Keys 0-7 -- SELECT assigned code.

2. Mode Selector Knob -- ON.

NOTES

- During normal operation with Mode Selector Knob in ON position, reply indicator flashes, indicating transponder replies to interrogations.

- Mode A reply codes are transmitted in ALT also; however, Mode C codes are suppressed when the Mode Selector Knob is positioned to ON.

3. IDT Button -- DEPRESS momentarily when instructed by ground controller to "squawk IDENT" ("R" will illuminate steadily indicating IDENT operation).

TO TRANSMIT MODE C (ALTITUDE REPORTING) CODES IN FLIGHT:

1. Transponder Code Selector Knob -- SELECT assigned code.
2. Mode Selector Knob -- ALT.

NOTES

- When directed by ground controller to "stop altitude squawk", turn Mode Selector Knob to ON for Mode A operation only.

- Altitude transmitted by the transponder for altitude squawk and displayed on the KT 76C panel is pressure altitude (referenced to 29.92") and conversion to indicated altitude is done in the ATC computers.

TO SELF-TEST TRANSPONDER OPERATION:

1. Mode Selector Knob -- TST. Check all displays.
2. Mode Selector Knob -- SELECT desired function.

TO PROGRAM VFR CODE:

1. Mode Selector Knob -- SBY.
2. Numeric Keys 0-7 -- SELECT desired VFR code.
3. IDT Button -- PRESS AND HOLD.
   a. VFR Code Button -- PRESS (while still holding IDT button) to place new VFR code in nonvolatile memory for subsequent call up.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally-mounted antenna, or related external antennas, may result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

Pilot's Operating Handbook and
FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

CESSNA MODEL 172S

AIRPLANES 172S8001 AND ON

SUPPLEMENT 3

BENDIX/KING KMA 26
AUDIO SELECTOR PANEL

SERIAL NO. ____________

REGISTRATION NO. ____________

This supplement must be inserted into Section 9 of the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual.

FAA APPROVAL

FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J
The Cessna Aircraft Co
Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1
Executive Engineer
Date: [illegible]

Member of GAMA

8 July 1998

172SPHUS-S3-00

SUPPLEMENT 3

BENDIX/KING KMA 26 AUDIO SELECTOR PANEL

The following Log of Effective Pages provides the date of issue for original and revised pages, as well as a listing of all pages in the Supplement. Pages which are affected by the current revision will carry the date of that revision

Revision Level	Date of Issue
0 (Original)	July 8, 1998

LOG OF EFFECTIVITY PAGES

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
Title (S3-1)	July 8/98	S3-6	July 8/98
S3-2	July 8/98	S3-7	July 8/98
S3-3	July 8/98	S3-8	July 8/98
S3-4	July 8/98	S3-9	July 8/98
S3-5	July 8/98	S3-10 blank	July 8/98

SERVICE BULLETIN CONFIGURATION LIST

The following is a list of Service Bulletins that are applicable to the operation of the airplane, and have been incorporated into this supplement. This list contains only those Service Bulletins that are currently active.

Number	Title	Airplane Unit Effectivity	Revision Incorporation	Incorporated In Airplane

SUPPLEMENT

BENDIX/KING KMA 26 AUDIO SELECTOR PANEL

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Bendix/King KMA 26 Audio Selector Panel is a combination audio amplifier, an audio distribution panel, intercom, and a marker beacon receiver. The audio amplifier is for amplification of the audio signals for the speaker system. All receiver audio distribution functions are controlled by two rows of pushbuttons. A rotary selector switch on the right side of the console connects the microphone to either EMG, Com 1, Com 2, Com 3 or PA (Unused position). All operating controls are shown and described in Figure 1.

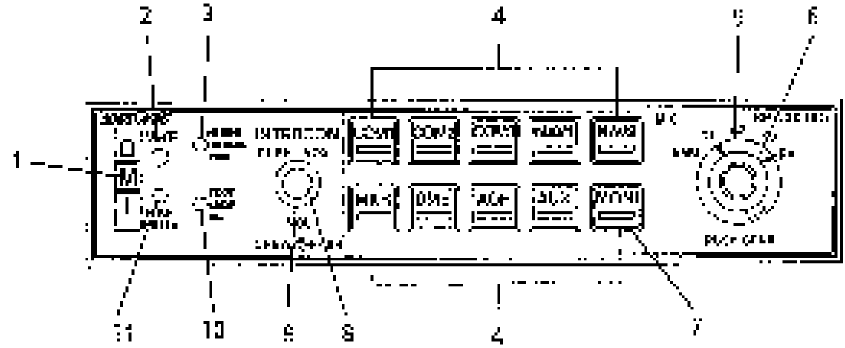
A crystal-controlled superheterodyne marker beacon receiver with 3-light presentation is incorporated within the unit. Dimming circuitry for the marker lamps automatically adjusts brightness appropriate to the cockpit ambient light level. Hi and Lo sensitivity and lamp test functions are also provided.

Light dimming for the audio control panel is manually controlled by the RADIO light rheostat knob.

MARKER FACILITIES

MARKER	IDENTIFYING TONE	LIGHT*
Inner, Airway & Fan	Continuous 6 dots/sec (3000 Hz)	White
Middle	Alternate dots and dashes (1300 Hz)	Amber
Outer	2 dashes/sec (400 Hz)	Blue

*When the identifying tone is keyed, the respective indicating light will blink accordingly.



1. MARKER BEACON ANNUNCIATOR LIGHTS -- The three-light marker beacon receiver built into the KMA 26 gives a visual and aural signal when the ship's antenna passes over a 75 MHz beacon. The blue, amber, and white lights on the faceplate, as well as the audio tones, identify the beacon type.

   INNER, AIRWAY and FAN -- Light illuminates white to indicate passage of ILS inner, airway or fan marker beacons.

   OUTER -- Light illuminates blue to indicate passage of outer marker beacon.

   MIDDLE -- Light illuminates amber to indicate passage of middle marker beacon.

2. PHOTOCELL FOR AUTOMATIC DIMMING OF MARKER BEACON LIGHTS AND SELECT BUTTON -- The photocell in the faceplate automatically dims the marker lights as well as the green annunciators in the Speaker Audio Select Buttons for night operation.

Figure 1. Bendix/King KMA 26 Audio Selector Panel (Sheet 1 of 4)

3. MARKER BEACON SENSITIVITY LAMP AND TEST SWITCH -- The "MKR" Audio Select button must be pushed so that the green annunciator is illuminated for the marker beacon to receive to provide an audio signal at beacon passage. When this switch is on "HI SENS" (upper) position, the high sensitivity is selected which permits you to hear the outer marker tone about a mile out. At this point you may select the the "LO SENS" (middle) position to temporarily silence the tone. It will start to sound again when you are closer to the marker, giving you a more precise indication of its location.

4. AUDIO SELECT BUTTONS -- Push button audio selection is available for three Communications receivers ("COM 1", "COM 2", and "COM 3"), two Navigation receivers ("NAV 1" and "NAV 2"), the internal Marker Beacon receiver ("MKR"), one DME, one ADF, and one additional auxiliary receiver ("AUX"). The "AUX" position could be used, for example, for a second DME or ADF. When a receiver's audio is selected, the green annunciator illuminates at the bottom of the button. Push the button again to deselect the receiver's audio.

5. MICROPHONE SELECTOR SWITCH (MIC) -- Used to select the desired transmitter for the cockpit microphones. The "C1", "C2", and "C3" positions are for transmitting on the Com 1, Com 2, and Com 3 communications transceivers, respectively. The "EMG" (emergency) position is used to bypass the KMA 28's audio amplifier and directly connects Com 1 to the pilot's microphone and headphones. This provides a fail-safe method of communication should the unit fail. The "PA" position may be selected when the aircraft is configured with a passenger address capability. The "Auto Com" feature always provides automatic headphone audio selection to match the Com transmitter in use. To add speaker audio, simply push the Speaker Select Switch (inner right knob) to the "in" position. Pulling the switch to the "out" position removes speaker audio.

Figure 1. Bendix/King KMA 28 Audio Selector Panel (Sheet 2 of 4)

6. SPEAKER SELECT (PUSH SPKR) SWITCH — With the Speaker Select Switch pushed in, both headphone and cabin speaker audio will be heard. Headphone audio is active full-time. Headphone audio cannot be deselected.

7. MONITOR SELECT (MONI) BUTTON - When activated, if Com 1 is selected on the Microphone Selector Switch then Com 2 audio is automatically routed to the speaker. Or if Com 2 is selected on the Microphone Selector Switch, then Com 1 is routed to the speaker. Pressing the "MONI" button again will disable the feature. Initially when "MONI" is selected the green annunciators in the button flash for approximately 5 seconds, then remains steady while the Com annunciation returns to its previous state.

8. CREW INTERCOM VOLUME (VOL CREW) KNOB and INTERCOM VOX SENSITIVITY SET (INTERCOM PUSH VOX) SWITCH -- Inside knob adjusts Pilot and Copilot intercom volume. Intercom operation is voice activated (VOX), where intercom becomes active automatically when a crew member or passenger begins to speak. Set the intercom VOX squelch by momentarily pressing and releasing the left inner knob when no one is speaking.

9. PASSENGER INTERCOM VOLUME (VOL PASS) KNOB - Adjusts passenger intercom volume.

Figure 1. Bendix/King KMA 26 Audio Selector Panel (Sheet 3 of 4)

10. INTERCOM MODE SELECT SWITCH – Has three modes "ALL", "CREW", AND "PILOT" which are selected with the toggle switch on the lower left side on the faceplate. In the "ALL" position the pilot, copilot, and passengers are all on the same intercom "loop" and everyone hears the radios. In the "CREW" position the pilot and copilot are on one intercom loop and can hear the radios while the passengers have their own dedicated intercom and do not hear the radios. In the "PILOT" mode the pilot hears the radios but is isolated from the intercom while the copilot and passengers are on the same intercom loop and do not hear the radios.

When either the "ALL" or "CREW" intercom modes are selected, the pilot's and copilot's intercom volume is controlled by rotating the Crew Intercom Volume Knob (left inner knob) while the passenger's volume is controlled by rotating the Passenger Intercom Volume Knob (left outer knob). When the "PILOT" intercom mode is selected, the copilot's and passenger's volume is controlled with the Passenger Intercom Volume Knob. Remember, the volume knobs on the KMA 26 control intercom volume only, not the receiver's volume.

11. MARKER MUTE BUTTON – Mutes currently active marker beacon audio.

Figure 1. Bendix/King KMA 26 Audio Selector Panel (Sheet 4 of 4)

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when this avionic equipment is installed.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

In the event of an audio amplifier in the KMA 26, as evidenced by the inability to transmit in COM 1, 2 or 3.

1. MIC Selector Switch -- EMG.

NOTE

This action bypasses the KMA 26 audio amplifier and connects the pilot's mic/head set directly to COM 1.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

AUDIO CONTROL SYSTEM OPERATION:

1. MIC Selector Switch -- Turn to desired transmitter.
2. SPEAKER and Audio Select Button(s) -- SELECT desired receiver(s).

NOTES

Rotation of the MIC selector switch selects the Com audio automatically.

MARKER BEACON RECEIVER OPERATION:

1. TEST Position -- HOLD toggle down momentarily to verify all lights are operational.

2. SENS Selections -- Select HI sensitivity for airway flying or LO for ILS/LOC approaches.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or related external antennas, may result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

Cessna

A Textron Company

Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

CESSNA MODEL 172S

AIRPLANES 172S8001 AND ON

SUPPLEMENT 4

POINTER MODEL 3000-11 EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER

SERIAL NO: ____________

REGISTRATION NO: ____________

This supplement must be inserted into Section 9 of the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual.

FAA APPROVAL

FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J

The Cessna Aircraft Co

Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1

Executive Engineer

Date: [illegible] 1998

Member of GAMA

8 July 1998

[illegible]

SUPPLEMENT 4

POINTER MODEL 3000-11 EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT)

The following Log of Effective Pages provides the date of issue for original and revised pages, as well as a listing of all pages in the Supplement. Pages which are affected by the current revision will carry the date of that revision.

Revision Level	Date of Issue
0 (Original)	July 8, 1998

LOG OF EFFECTIVITY PAGES

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
Title (S4-1)	July 8/98	S4-5	July 8/98
S4-2	July 8/98	S4-6	July 8/98
S4-3	July 8/98	S4-7	July 8/98
S4-4	July 8/98	S4-8	July 8/98

SERVICE BULLETIN CONFIGURATION LIST

The following is a list of Service Bulletins that are applicable to the operation of the airplane, and have been incorporated into this supplement. This list contains only those Service Bulletins that are currently active.

Number	Title	Airplane Unit Effectivity	Revision Incorporation	Incorporated In Airplane

SUPPLEMENT

POINTER MODEL 3000-11 EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT)

SECTION 1

GENERAL

This supplement provides information which must be observed when operating the Pointer Model 3000-11 Emergency Locator Transmitter.

The Pointer Model 3000-11 ELT consists of a self-contained dual-frequency solid-state transmitter powered by a battery pack consisting of five alkaline "C" cell batteries and is automatically activated by a deceleration sensing inertia "G" switch, which is designed to activate when the unit senses longitudinal inertia forces as required in TSO-C91A. Also, a remote switch/annunciator is installed on the top right hand side of the copilot's instrument panel for control of the ELT from the flight crew station. The annunciator, which is in the center of the rocker switch, illuminates when the ELT transmitter is transmitting. The ELT emits an omni-directional signal on the international distress frequencies of 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz. General aviation and commercial aircraft, the FAA and CAP monitor 121.5 MHz, and 243.0 MHz is monitored by the military.

The ELT is contained in a high impact, fire retardant, glass filled Lexan case with carrying handle and is mounted behind the aft cabin partition wall on the right side of the tailcone. To gain access to the unit, unfasten the turn fasteners on the aft cabin partition. The ELT is operated by a control panel at the forward facing end of the unit or by the remote switch/annunciator located on the top right hand portion of the copilot's instrument panel (see Figure 1).

Power for the transmitter is provided by an alkaline battery pack inside the transmitter case.

In accordance with FAA regulations, the ELT's battery pack must be replaced after 2 years shelf or service life or for any of the following reasons:

a. After the transmitter has been used in an emergency situation (including any inadvertent activation of unknown duration).
b. After the transmitter has been operated for more than one cumulative hour (e.g. time accumulated in several tests and inadvertent activation of known duration).
c. On or before battery replacement date. Battery replacement date is marked on the battery pack and the label on the transmitter.

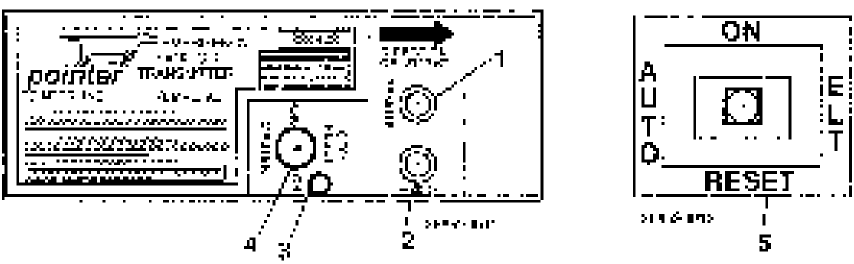


Figure 1. Emergency Locator Transmitter

1. REMOTE CABLE JACK -- Connects to ELT remote switch/annunciator located on the copilot's instrument panel.
2. ANTENNA RECEPTACLE -- Connects to antenna mounted on top of tailcone.
3. TRANSMITTER ANNUNCIATOR LIGHT -- Illuminates red to indicate the transmitter is transmitting a distress signal.
4. MASTER FUNCTION SELECTOR SWITCH (3-position toggle switch):

   AUTO -- Arms transmitter for automatic activation if "G" switch senses a predetermined deceleration level.

   ON -- Activates transmitter instantly. Used for test purposes and if "G" switch is inoperative. The ON position bypasses the automatic activation switch. (The red annunciator in the center of the remote switch/annunciator should illuminate).

OFF/RESET – Deactivates transmitter during handling, following rescue and to reset the automatic activation function. (The red annunciator in the center of the remote switch/annunciator should extinguish).

5. REMOTE SWITCH/ANNUNCIATOR (3-position rocker switch):

ON - Remotely activates the transmitter for test or emergency situations. Red annunciator in center of rocker switch illuminates to indicate that the transmitter is transmitting a distress signal.

AUTO – Arms transmitter for automatic activation if "G" switch senses a predetermined deceleration level.

RESET -- Deactivates and rearms transmitter after automatic activation by the "G" switch. Red annunciator in center of rocker switch should extinguish.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

Refer to Section 2 of the Pilot's Operating Handbook (POH).

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

Before performing a forced landing, especially in remote and mountainous areas, activate the ELT transmitter by positioning the remote switch/annunciator to the ON position. The annunciator in center of the rocker switch should be illuminated.

Immediately after a forced landing where emergency assistance is required, the ELT should be utilized as follows:

NOTE

The ELT remote switch/annunciator system could be inoperative if damaged during a forced landing. If inoperative, the inertia "G" switch will activate automatically. However, to turn the ELT OFF and ON again requires manual switching of the master function selector switch which is located on the ELT unit.

1. ENSURE ELT ACTIVATION:
   a. Position remote switch/annunciator to the ON position even if annunciator light is already on.
   b. If airplane radio is operable and can be safely used (no threat of fire or explosion), turn ON and select 121.5 MHz. If the ELT can be heard transmitting, it is working properly.
   c. Ensure that antenna is clear of obstructions.

NOTE

When the ELT is activated, a decreasing tone will be heard before the typical warbling tone begins.

2. PRIOR TO SIGHTING RESCUE AIRCRAFT -- Conserve airplane battery. Do not activate radio transceiver.
3. AFTER SIGHTING RESCUE AIRCRAFT -- Position remote switch/annunciator to the RESET position and release to the AUTO position to prevent radio interference. Attempt contact with rescue aircraft with the radio transceiver set to a frequency of 121.5 MHz. If no contact is established, return the remote switch/annunciator to the ON position immediately.
4. FOLLOWING RESCUE -- Position remote switch/annunciator to the AUTO position, terminating emergency transmissions.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

As long as the remote switch/annunciator is in the AUTO position and the ELT master function selector switch remains in the AUTO position, the ELT automatically activates when the unit senses longitudinal inertia forces as required in TSO-C91A.

Following a lightning strike, or an exceptionally hard landing, the ELT may activate although no emergency exists. If the remote switch/annunciator illuminates, the ELT has inadvertently activated itself. Another way to check is to select 121.5 MHz on the radio transceiver and listen for an emergency tone transmission. If the remote switch/annunciator is illuminated or an emergency tone is heard, position the remote switch/annunciator in the RESET position and release to the AUTO position.

The ELT must be serviced in accordance with FAR Part 91.207.

INSPECTION/TEST

1. The emergency locator transmitter should be tested every 100 hours.

NOTE

Test should only be conducted within the first 5 minutes of each hour.

2. Disconnect antenna cable from ELT.
3. Turn airplane battery switch and avionics power switches ON.
4. Turn airplane transceiver ON and set frequency to 121.5 MHz.
5. Place remote switch/annunciator in the ON position. The annunciator should illuminate. Permit only three emergency tone transmissions, then immediately reposition the remote switch/annunciator to the RESET position and release to the AUTO position.
6. Place the ELT master function selector switch in the ON position. Verify that the transmitter annunciator light on the ELT and the remote switch/annunciator on the instrument panel are illuminated.
7. Place the ELT master function selector switch in the OFF/RESET position.
8. Reposition ELT master function selector switch to AUTO.
9. Reconnect antenna cable to ELT.

WARNING

A TEST WITH THE ANTENNA CONNECTED SHOULD BE APPROVED AND CONFIRMED BY THE NEAREST CONTROL TOWER.

NOTE

Without its antenna connected, the ELT will produce sufficient signal to reach the airplane transceiver, yet it will not disturb other communications or damage output circuitry.

IN-FLIGHT MONITORING AND REPORTING

Pilot's are encouraged to monitor 121.5 MHz and/or 243.0 MHz while in flight to assist in identifying possible emergency ELT transmissions. On receiving a signal, report the following information to the nearest air traffic control facility:

1. Your position at the time the signal was first heard.
2. Your position at the time the signal was last heard.
3. Your position at maximum signal strength.
4. Your flight altitude and frequency on which the emergency signal was heard — 121.5 MHz or 243.0 MHz. If possible, positions should be given relative to a navigation aid. If the aircraft has homing equipment, provide the bearing to the emergency signal with each reported position.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna, or several related antennas, may result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

Cessna
A Textron Company

Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

CESSNA MODEL 172S

AIRPLANES 172S8001 AND ON

SUPPLEMENT 6

BENDIX/KING KR87 AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER

SERIAL NO. ____________

REGISTRATION NO. ____________

This supplement must be inserted into Section 9 of the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual when the Automatic Direction Finder is installed.

FAA APPROVAL

FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J
The Cessna Aircraft Co
Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1

Executive Engineer

Date: [illegible] 1998

Member of GAMA

8 July 1998

172SPHUS-S6-00

SUPPLEMENT 6

BENDIX/KING KR 87 AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER ADF

The following Log of Effective Pages provides the date of issue for original and revised pages, as well as a listing of all pages in the Supplement. Pages which are affected by the current revision will carry the date of that revision

Revision Level	Date of Issue
0 (Original)	July 8, 1998

LOG OF EFFECTIVITY PAGE

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
Title (S6-1)	July 8/98	S6-7	July 8/98
S6-2	July 8/98	S6-8	July 8/98
S6-3	July 8/98	S6-9	July 8/98
S6-4	July 8/98	S6-10	July 8/98
S6-5	July 8/98	S6-11	July 8/98
S6-6	July 8/98	S6-12	July 8/98

SERVICE BULLETIN CONFIGURATION LIST

The following is a list of Service Bulletins that are applicable to the operation of the airplane, and have been incorporated into this supplement. This list contains only those Service Bulletins that are currently active.

Number	Title	Airplane Unit Effectivity	Revision Incorporation	Incorporated In Airplane

SUPPLEMENT

BENDIX/KING KR 87 AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER ADF

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Bendix/King Digital ADF is a panel-mounted, digitally tuned automatic direction finder. It is designed to provide continuous 1-kHz digital tuning in the frequency range of 200-kHz to 1799-kHz and eliminates the need for mechanical band switching. The system is comprised of a receiver, a built-in electronics timer, a bearing indicator, and a KA-44B combined loop and sense antenna. Operating controls and displays for the Bendix/King Digital ADF are shown and described in Figure 1. The audio system used in conjunction with this radio for speaker-phone selection is shown and described in Supplement 3 of this handbook.

The Bendix/King Digital ADF can be used for position plotting and homing procedures, and for aural reception of amplitude-modulated (AM) signals.

The "flip-flop" frequency display allows switching between pre-selected "STANDBY" and "ACTIVE" frequencies by pressing the frequency transfer button. Both pre-selected frequencies are stored in a non-volatile memory circuit (no battery power required) and displayed in large, easy-to-read, self-dimming gas discharge numerics. The active frequency is continuously displayed in the left window, while the right window will display either the standby frequency or the selected readout from the built-in electronic timer.

The built-in electronic timer has two separate and independent timing functions. An automatic flight timer that starts whenever the unit is turned on. This timer functions up to 59 hours and 59 minutes. An elapsed timer which will count up or down for up to 59 minutes and 59 seconds. When a preset time interval has been programmed and the countdown reaches :00, the display will flash for 15 seconds. Since both the flight timer and elapsed timer operate independently, it is possible to monitor either one without disrupting the other. The pushbutton controls and the bearing indicators are internally lighted. Intensity is controlled by the RADIO light dimming rheostat.

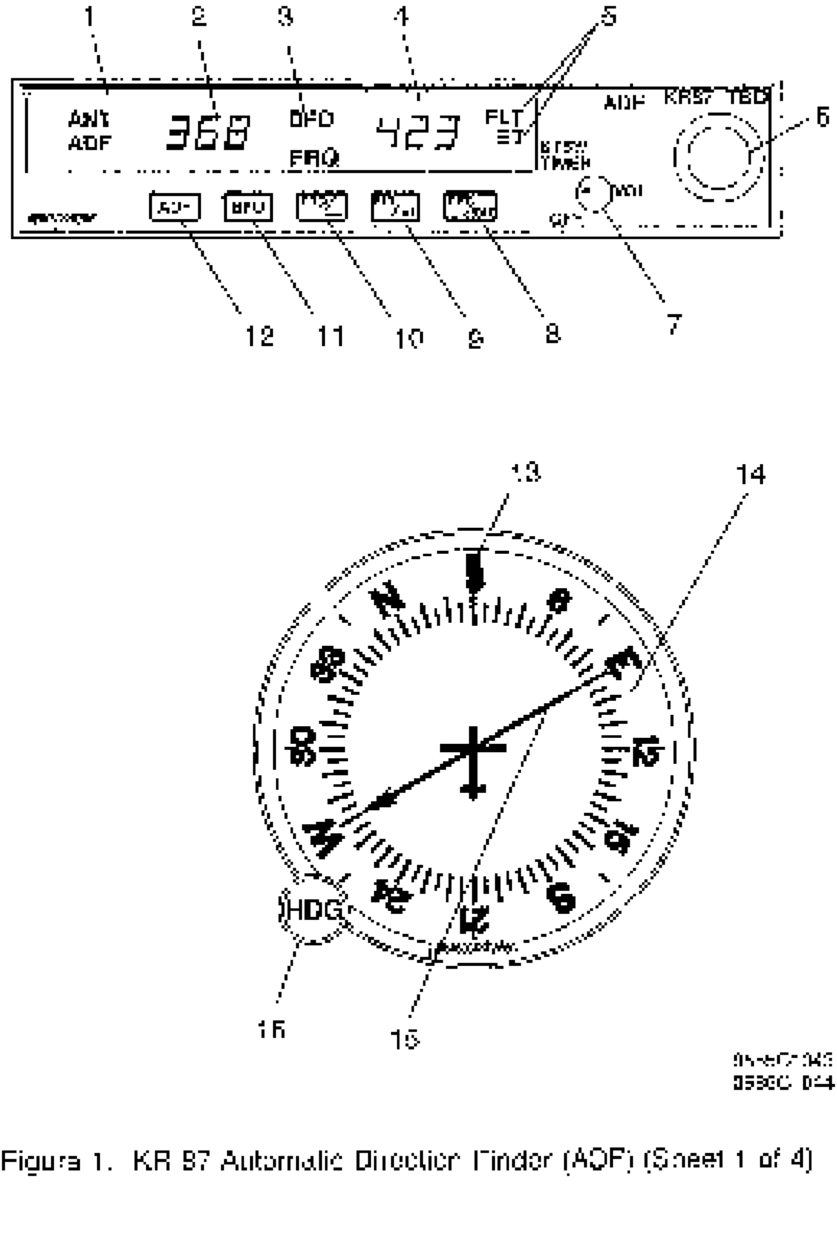


Figure 1. KR 87 Automatic Direction Finder (ADF) (Sheet 1 of 4)

1. ANT/ADF MODE ANNUNCIATOR -- Antenna (ANT) is selected by the "out" position of the ADF button. This mode improves the audio reception and is usually used for station identification. The bearing pointer is deactivated and will park in the 90° relative position. Automatic Direction Finder (ADF) mode is selected by the depressed position of the ADF button. This mode activates the bearing pointer. The bearing pointer will point in the direction of the station relative to the aircraft heading.

2. IN-USE FREQUENCY DISPLAY -- The frequency to which the ADF is tuned is displayed here. The active ADF frequency can be changed directly when either of the timer functions is selected.

3. BFO (Beat Frequency Oscillator) ANNUNCIATOR -- The BFO mode, activated and annunciated when the "BFO" button is depressed, permits the carrier wave and associated morse code identifier broadcast on the carrier wave to be heard.

NOTE

CW signals (Morse Code) are unmodulated and no audio will be heard without use of BFO. This type of signal is not used in the United States air navigation. It is used in some foreign countries and marine beacons.

4. STANDBY FREQUENCY/FLIGHT TIME OR ELAPSED TIME ANNUNCIATION -- When FRQ is displayed the STANDBY frequency is displayed in the right hand display. The STANDBY frequency is selected using the frequency select knobs. The selected STANDBY frequency is put into the ACTIVE frequency windows by pressing the frequency transfer button. Either the standby frequency, the flight timer, or the elapsed time is displayed in this position. The flight timer and elapsed timer are displayed replacing the standby frequency which goes into "blind" memory to be called back at any time by depressing the FRQ button. Flight time or elapsed time are displayed and annunciated alternatively by depressing the FLT/ET button.

Figure 1. KR 87 Automatic Direction Finder (ADF) (Sheet 2 of 4)

5. FLIGHT TIMER AND ELAPSED TIMER MODE ANNUNCIATION -- Either the elapsed time (ET) or flight time (FLT) mode is annunciated here.

6. FREQUENCY SELECT KNOBS -- Selects the standby frequency when FRQ is displayed and directly selects the active frequency whenever either of the time functions is selected. The frequency selector knobs may be rotated either clockwise or counterclockwise. The small knob is pulled out to tune the 1's. The small knob is pushed in to tune the 10's. The outer knob tunes the 100's with rollover into the 1000's up to 1799. These knobs are also used to set the desired time when the elapsed timer is used in the countdown mode.

7. ON/OFF/VOLUME CONTROL SWITCH (ON/OFF/VOL) -- Controls primary power and audio output level. Clockwise rotation from OFF position applies primary power to the receiver; further clockwise rotation increases audio level. Audio muting causes the audio output to be muted unless the receiver is locked on a valid station.

8. SET/RESET ELAPSED TIMER BUTTON (SET/RST) -- The set/reset button when pressed resets the elapsed timer whether it is being displayed or not.

9. FLIGHT TIMER/ELAPSED TIMER MODE SELECTOR BUTTON (FLT/ET) -- The Flight Timer/Elapsed Time mode selector button when pressed alternatively selects either Flight Timer mode or Elapsed Timer mode.

Figure 1. KR 87 Automatic Direction Finder (ADF) (Sheet 3 of 4)

10. FREQUENCY TRANSFER BUTTON (FRQ) -- The FRQ transfer button when pressed exchanges the active and standby frequencies. The new frequency becomes active and the former active frequency goes into standby.

11. BFO (Beat Frequency Oscillator) BUTTON -- The BFO button selects the BFO mode when in the depressed position. (See note under item 3).

12. ADF BUTTON -- The ADF button selects either the ANT mode or the ADF mode. The ANT mode is selected with the ADF button in the out position. The ADF mode is selected with the ADF button in the depressed position.

13. LUBBER LINE -- Indicates relative or magnetic heading of the aircraft. The heading must be manually input by the pilot with the heading (HDG) knob.

14. COMPASS CARD -- Manually rotatable card that indicates relative or magnetic heading of aircraft, as selected by HDG knob.

15. BEARING POINTER -- Indicates relative or magnetic bearing to station as selected by HDG knob. If the relative heading of North (N) is manually selected under the lubber line by the pilot, then the bearing pointer indicates the relative bearing to the station. If the aircraft's magnetic heading is selected under the lubber line by the pilot, then the bearing pointer indicates the magnetic bearing to the station.

16. HEADING KNOB (HDG) -- Rotates card to set in relative or magnetic heading of aircraft.

Figure 1. KR 87 Automatic Direction Finder (ADF) (Sheet 4 of 4)

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to airplane limitations when the KR 87 ADF is installed.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There are no changes to the basic airplane emergency procedures when the KR 87 ADF is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

TO OPERATE AS AN AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER:

1. OFF/VOL Control -- ON.
2. Frequency Selector Knobs -- SELECT desired frequency in the standby frequency display.
3. FRQ Button -- PRESS to move the desired frequency from the standby to the active position.
4. ADF Selector Switch (on audio control panel) -- SELECT as desired.
5. OFF/VOL Control -- SET to desired volume level and identify that desired station is being received.
6. ADF Button -- SELECT ADF mode and note relative bearing on indicator.

ADF TEST (**PRE-FLIGHT** or **IN-FLIGHT**):

1. ADF Button -- SELECT ANT mode and note pointer moves to 90° position.
2. ADF Button -- SELECT ADF mode and note the pointer moves without hesitation to the station bearing. Excessive pointer sluggishness, wavering or reversals indicate a signal that is too weak or a system malfunction.

TO OPERATE BFO:

1. OFF/VOL Control -- ON.
2. BFO Button -- PRESS on.
3. ADF Selector Buttons (on audio control panel) -- SET to desired mode.
4. VOL Control -- ADJUST to desired listening level.

NOTE

A 1000-Hz tone and Morse Code identifier is heard in the audio output when a CW signal is received.

TO OPERATE FLIGHT TIMER:

1. OFF/VOL Control -- ON.
2. FLT/ET Mode Button -- PRESS (once or twice) until FLT is annunciated. Timer will already be counting since it is activated by turning the unit on.
3. OFF/VOL Control -- OFF and then ON if it is desired to reset the flight timer.

TO OPERATE AS A COMMUNICATIONS RECEIVER ONLY:

1. OFF/VOL Control -- ON.
2. ADF Button -- SELECT ANT mode.
3. Frequency Selector Knobs -- SELECT desired frequency in the standby frequency display.
4. FRQ Button -- PRESS to move the desired frequency from the standby to the active position.
5. ADF Selector Buttons (on audio control panel) -- SET to desired mode.
6. VOL Control -- ADJUST to desired listening level.

TO OPERATE ELAPSED TIME TIMER-COUNT UP MODE:

1. OFF/VOL Control -- ON.
2. FLT/ET Mode Button -- PRESS (once or twice) until ET is annunciated.
3. SET/RST Button -- PRESS momentarily to reset elapsed timer to zero.

NOTE

The Standby Frequency which is in memory while Flight Time or Elapsed Time modes are being displayed may be called back by pressing the FRQ button, then transferred to active use by pressing the FRQ button again.

TO OPERATE ELAPSED TIME TIMER-COUNT DOWN MODE:

1. OFF/VOL Control -- ON.
2. FLT/ET Mode Button -- PRESS (once or twice) until ET is annunciated.
3. SET/RST Button -- PRESS until the ET annunciation begins to flash.
4. FREQUENCY SELECTOR KNOBS -- SET desired time in the elapsed time display. The small knob is pulled out to tune the 1's. The small knob is pushed in to tune the 10's. The outer knob tunes minutes up to 59 minutes.

NOTE

Selector knobs remain in the time set mode for 15 seconds after the last entry or until the SET/RST, FLT/ET or FRQ button is pressed.

5. SET/RST Button -- PRESS to start countdown. When the timer reaches 0, it will start to count up as display flashes for 15 seconds.

NOTE

While FLT or ET are displayed, the active frequency on the left side of the window may be changed, by using the frequency selector knobs, without any effect on the stored standby frequency or the other modes.

ADF OPERATION NOTES:

ERRONEOUS ADF BEARING DUE TO RADIO FREQUENCY PHENOMENA:

In the U.S., the FCC, which assigns AM radio frequencies, occasionally will assign the same frequency to more than one station in an area. Certain conditions, such as Night Effect, may cause signals from such stations to overlap. This should be taken into consideration when using AM broadcast station for navigation.

Sunspots and atmospheric phenomena may occasionally distort reception so that signals from two stations on the same frequency will overlap. For this reason, it is always wise to make positive identification of the station being tuned, by switching the function selector to ANT and listening for station call letters.

ELECTRICAL STORMS:

In the vicinity of electrical storms, an ADF indicator pointer tends to swing from the station tuned toward the center of the storm.

NIGHT EFFECT:

This is a disturbance particularly strong just after sunset and just after dawn. An ADF indicator pointer may swing erratically at these times. If possible, tune to the most powerful station at the lowest frequency. If this is not possible, take the average of pointer oscillations to determine relative station bearing.

MOUNTAIN EFFECT:

Radio waves reflecting from the surface of mountains may cause the pointer to fluctuate or show an erroneous bearing. This should be taken into account when taking bearings over mountainous terrain.

COASTAL REFRACTION:

Radio waves may be refracted when passing from land to sea or when moving parallel to the coastline. This also should be taken into account.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this avionic equipment is installed. However, the installation of an externally mounted antenna or related external antennas, may result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

Cessna

A Textron Company

Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

CESSNA MODEL 172S

AIRPLANES 172S8001 AND ON

SUPPLEMENT 8

WINTERIZATION KIT

SERIAL NO. ____________________

REGISTRATION NO. ____________________

This supplement must be inserted into Section 9 of the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual when the Winterization Kit is installed.

FAA APPROVAL
FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J
The Cessna Aircraft Co
Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1
Executive Engineer
[illegible]

Member of GAMA

8 July 1998

172SPHUS-S8-00

SUPPLEMENT 8

WINTERIZATION KIT

The following Log of Effective Pages provides the date of issue for original and revised pages, as well as a listing of all pages in the Supplement. Pages which are affected by the current revision will carry the date of that revision.

Revision Level	Date of Issue
0 (Original)	July 8, 1998

LOG OF EFFECTIVITY PAGES

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
Title (S8-1)	July 8/98		
S8-2	July 8/98		
S8-3	July 8/98		
S8-4	July 8/98		

SERVICE BULLETIN CONFIGURATION LIST

The following is a list of Service Bulletins that are applicable to the operation of the airplane, and have been incorporated into this supplement. This list contains only those Service Bulletins that are currently active.

Number	Title	Airplane Unit Effectivity	Revision Incorporation	Incorporated In Airplane

SUPPLEMENT

WINTERIZATION KIT

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The winterization kit consists of two cover plates (with placards) which attach to the air intakes in the cowling nose cap, a placard silk screened on the instrument panel, and insulation for the crankcase breather line. This equipment should be installed for operations in temperatures consistently below 20°F (-7°C). Once installed, the crankcase breather insulation is approved for permanent use, regardless of temperature.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

The following information must be presented in the form of placards when the airplane is equipped with a winterization kit.

1. On each nose cap cover plate:

REMOVE WHEN O.A.T. EXCEEDS +20°F.

2. On the instrument panel near the EGT gauge:

WINTERIZATION KIT MUST BE REMOVED WHEN OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE IS ABOVE 20°F.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when the winterization kit is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane normal procedures when the winterization kit is installed.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when the winterization kit is installed.

Cessna
A Textron Company

Pilot's Operating Handbook and
FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

CESSNA MODEL 172S

AIRPLANES 172S8001 AND ON

SUPPLEMENT 9

DAVTRON MODEL 803
CLOCK/O.A.T.

SERIAL NO. ____________________

REGISTRATION NO. ____________________

This supplement must be inserted into Section 9 of the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual when the Davtron Clock/O.A.T. is installed.

FAA APPROVAL

FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J
The Cessna Aircraft Co
Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1

Executive Engineer

Date: JULY 10, 1998

Member of GAMA

8 July 1998

172SPHUS-S9-00

SUPPLEMENT 9

DAVTRON MODEL 803 CLOCK/O.A.T.

The following Log of Effective Pages provides the date of issue for original and revised pages, as well as a listing of all pages in the Supplement. Pages which are affected by the current revision will carry the date of that revision

Revision Level	Date of Issue
0 (Original)	July 8, 1998

LOG OF EFFECTIVITY PAGES

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
Title (S9-1)	July 8/98	S9-5	July 8/98
S9-2	July 8/98	S9-6	July 8/98
S9-3	July 8/98		
S9-4	July 8/98		

SERVICE BULLETIN CONFIGURATION LIST

The following is a list of Service Bulletins that are applicable to the operation of the airplane, and have been incorporated into this supplement. This list contains only those Service Bulletins that are currently active.

Number	Title	Airplane Unit Effectivity	Revision Incorporation	Incorporated In Airplane

SUPPLEMENT

DIGITAL CLOCK/O.A.T.

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Davtron Model 803 digital clock combines the features of a clock, outside air temperature gauge (O.A.T.) and voltmeter in a single unit. The unit is designed for ease of operation with the use of three buttons. The upper button is used to control sequencing between temperature and voltage. The lower two buttons control reading and timing functions related to the digital clock. Temperature and voltage functions are displayed in the upper portion of the unit's LCD window, and clock/timing functions are displayed in the lower portion of the unit's LCD window.

The digital display features an internal light (back light) to ensure good visibility under low cabin lighting conditions and at night. The intensity of the back light is controlled by the PANEL LT rheostat. In addition, the display incorporates a test function which allows checking that all elements of the display are operating.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when the digital clock/O.A.T. is installed.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when the digital clock/O.A.T. is installed.

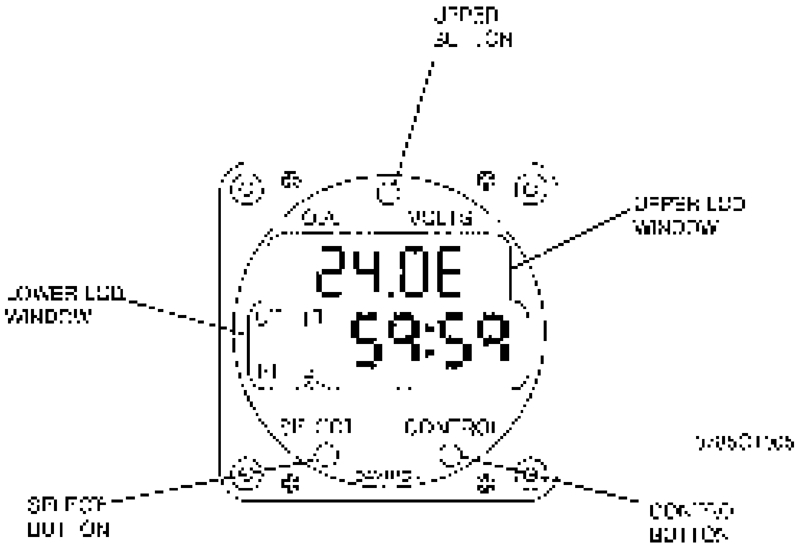


Figure 1. Clock/OAT Gauge

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

TEST MODE

The unit may be tested by holding the SELECT button down for three seconds. Proper operation is indicated by the display 88:88 and activation of all four annunciators.

O.A.T. / VOLTMETER OPERATION

The upper portion of the LCD window is dedicated to O.A.T. and voltmeter operations. The voltmeter reading is preselected upon startup and is indicated by an "E" following the display reading. Pushing the upper control button will sequence the window from voltage to fahrenheit ("F") to centigrade ("C"), and back again to voltage.

CLOCK OPERATIONS

The lower portion of the LCD window is dedicated to clock and timing operations. Pushing the SELECT button will sequence the window from universal time (UT) to local time (LT) to flight time (FT) to elapsed time (ET), and back again to universal time. Pushing the CONTROL button allows for timing functions within the four SELECT menus. Setting procedures are as follows:

SETTING UNIVERSAL TIME

Use the SELECT button to select universal time (UT). Simultaneously press both the SELECT and the CONTROL buttons to enter the set mode. The tens of hours digit will start flashing. The CONTROL button has full control of the flashing digit, and each button push increments the digit. Once the tens of hours is set the SELECT button selects the next digit to be set. After the last digit has been selected and set with the CONTROL button, a final push of the SELECT button exits the set mode. The lighted annunciator will resume its normal flashing, indicating the clock is running in universal time mode.

SETTING LOCAL TIME

Use the SELECT button to select local time (LT). Simultaneously press both the SELECT and the CONTROL buttons to enter the set mode. The tens of hours digit will start flashing. The set operation is the same as for UT, except that minutes are already synchronized with the UT clock and cannot be set in local time.

FLIGHT TIME RESET

Use the SELECT button to select flight time (FT). Hold the CONTROL button down for 3 seconds, or until 99:59 appears on the display. Flight time will be zeroed upon release of the CONTROL button.

SETTING FLIGHT TIME FLASHING ALARM

Use the SELECT button to select flight time (FT). Simultaneously press both the SELECT and the CONTROL buttons to enter the set mode. The tens of hours digit will start flashing. The set operation is the same as for UT. When actual flight time equals the alarm time, the display will flash. Pressing either the SELECT or CONTROL button will turn the flashing off and zero the alarm time. Flight time is unchanged and continues counting.

SETTING ELAPSED TIME COUNT UP

Use the SELECT button to select elapsed time (ET). Press the CONTROL button and elapsed time will start counting. Elapsed time counts up to 59 minutes, 59 seconds, and then switches to hours and minutes. It continues counting up to 99 hours and 59 minutes. Pressing the CONTROL button again resets elapsed time to zero.

SETTING ELAPSED TIME COUNT DOWN

Use the SELECT button to select Elapsed Time (ET). Simultaneously press both the SELECT and the CONTROL buttons to enter the set mode. The tens of hours digit will start flashing. The set operation is the same as for UT, and a count down time can be set from a maximum of 59 minutes and 59 seconds. Once the last digit is set, pressing the SELECT button exits the set mode and the clock is ready to start the countdown. Pressing the CONTROL button now will start the countdown. When countdown reaches zero, the display will flash. Pressing either the SELECT or CONTROL button will reset the alarm. After reaching zero, the elapsed time counter will count up.

Button Select Disable

When there is no airplane power applied to the unit, the CONTROL and SELECT buttons are disabled.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this equipment is installed. However, installation of this O.A.T. probe may result in a minor reduction in cruise performance.

FAA APPROVED

AIRPLANE FLIGHT MANUAL SUPPLEMENT

FOR

CESSNA MODELS
172R, 172S, 182S,
206H, T206H

WITH

BENDIX/KING® KLN 94 NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Reg. No. N55252

Ser. No. 172S8202

This supplement must be attached to the FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual when the Bendix/King KLN 94 GPS is installed in accordance with STC SA00810WI-D. The information contained herein supplements or supersedes the basic manual only in those areas listed herein. For limitations, procedures, and performance information not contained in this supplement, consult the basic Airplane Flight Manual.

FAA APPROVED: [signature]

FOR CHRIS DURKIN
DAS Coordinator
Honeywell International Inc.
DAS-500883-CE

DATE: 11-1-2000

LOG OF REVISIONS

REV	PAGE(S)	DESCRIPTION	APPROVAL/DATE
-	All	Original issue	See Cover

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1 - GENERAL

The KLN 94 GPS panel mounted unit contains the GPS sensor, the navigation computer, a Color LCD display, and all controls required to operate the unit. It also houses the data base card which plugs directly into the front of the unit.

The data base card is an electronic memory containing information on airports, navaids, intersections, DPs, STARs, instrument approaches, special use airspace, land data (roads, bodies of water, cities, obstacles, railroad tracks), and other items of value to the pilot.

Every 28 days, Bendix/King receives new aeronautical data base information from Jeppesen Sanderson for the North American data base region. (The land data is updated on a less frequent basis.) This information is processed and downloaded onto the data base cards. Bendix/King makes these data base card updates available to KLN 94 GPS users.

Provided the KLN 94 GPS navigation system is receiving adequate usable signals, it has been demonstrated capable of and has been shown to meet the accuracy specifications of:

VFR/IFR en route oceanic and remote, en route domestic, terminal, and instrument approach (GPS, Loran-C, VOR, VOR-DME, TACAN, NDB, NDB-DME, RNAV) operation within the U.S. National Airspace System, North Atlantic Minimum Navigation Performance Specifications (MNPS) Airspace and latitudes bounded by 74° North and 60° South using the WGS-84 (or NAD 83) coordinate reference datum in accordance with the criteria of AC 20-138, AC 91-49, and AC 120-33. Navigation data is based upon use of only the global positioning system (GPS) operated by the United States.

NOTE: Aircraft using GPS for oceanic IFR operations may use the KLN 94 to replace one of the other approved means of long-range navigation. A single KLN 94 GPS installation may also be used on short oceanic routes which require only one means of long-range navigation.

NOTE: The KLN 94 is qualified for BRNAV (Basic Area Navigation) operation in the European region in accordance with the criteria of AC 90-96. (Reference ICAO Doc 7030 Regional Supplementary Procedures, JAA Technical Guidance Leaflet AMJ20X2 and Eurocontrol RNAV Standard Doc 003-93 Area Navigation Equipment Operational Requirements and Functional Requirements (RNAV).)

NOTE: FAA approval of the KLN 94 does not necessarily constitute approval for use in foreign airspace.

SECTION 2 - LIMITATIONS

A. The KLN 94 GPS Pilot's Guide, P/N 006-18207-0000, dated September, 2000 (or later applicable revision) must be immediately available to the flight crew whenever navigation is predicated on the use of the system. The Operational Revision Status (ORS) of the Pilot's Guide must match the ORS level annunciated on the Self Test page.

B. Navigation is prohibited within 60 n.m. of the north and south poles (i.e. at greater than 89° north and south latitudes).

C. IFR Navigation is restricted as follows:

1. The system must utilize ORS level 01 or later FAA approved revision.

2. The data on the self test page must be verified prior to use.

3. IFR en route and terminal navigation is prohibited unless the pilot verifies the currency of the aeronautical data base or verifies each selected waypoint for accuracy by reference to current approved data.

4. Instrument approaches must be accomplished in accordance with approved instrument approach procedures that are retrieved from the KLN 94 data base. The KLN 94 aeronautical data base must incorporate the current update cycle.

   (a) The KLN 94 Quick Reference, P/N 006-18228-0000, Rev. 1, dated 8/2000 (or later applicable revision) must be immediately available to the flight crew during instrument approach operations.

   (b) Instrument approaches must be conducted in the approach mode and RAIM must be available at the Final Approach Fix.

   (c) APR ACTV mode must be annunciated at the Final Approach Fix.

   (d) Accomplishment of ILS, LOC, LOC-BC, LDA, SDF, and MLS approaches are not authorized.

(e) When an alternate airport is required by the applicable operating rules, it must be served by an approach based on other than GPS or Loran-C navigation.

(f) The KLN 94 can only be used for approach guidance if the reference coordinate datum system for the instrument approach is WGS-84 or NAD-83. (All approaches in the KLN 94 data base use the WGS-84 or the NAD-83 geodetic datums.)

5. For BRNAV operations in the European region:

(a) With 23 (24 if the altitude input to the KLN 94 is not available) or more satellites projected to be operational for the flight, the aircraft can depart without further action.

(b) With 22 (23 if the altitude input to the KLN 94 is not available) or fewer satellites projected to be operational for the flight, the availability of the GPS integrity (RAIM) should be confirmed for the intended flight (route and time). This should be obtained from a prediction program run outside the aircraft. The prediction program must comply with the criteria of appendix 1 of AC90-96. In the event of a predicted continuous loss of RAIM of more than 5 minutes for any part of the intended flight, the flight should be delayed, cancelled, or rerouted on a track where RAIM requirements can be met.

NOTE: Honeywell's Preflight, Version 2.0 or later computer based prediction program may be used for the RAIM prediction. Alternate methods should be submitted for approval in accordance with Advisory Circular AC90-96.

6. The aircraft must have other approved navigation equipment appropriate to the route of flight installed and operational.

SECTION 3 - EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

A. If the KLN 94 GPS information is not available or invalid, utilize remaining operational navigation equipment as required.

B. If a "RAIM NOT AVAILABLE" message is displayed while conducting an instrument approach, terminate the approach. Execute a missed approach if required.

C. If a "RAIM NOT AVAILABLE" message is displayed in the en route or terminal phase of flight, continue to navigate using the KLN 94 or revert to an alternate means of navigation appropriate to the route and phase of flight. When continuing to use GPS navigation, position must be verified every 15 minutes using another IFR approved navigation system.

D. Refer to the KLN 94 Pilot's Guide, Appendices B and C, for appropriate pilot actions to be accomplished in response to annunciated messages.

SECTION 4 - NORMAL PROCEDURES

A. OPERATION

Normal operating procedures are outlined in the KLN 94 GPS Pilot's Guide, P/N 006-18207-0000, dated September 2000, (or later applicable revision). A KLN 94 Quick Reference, P/N 006-18225-0000 dated 8/2000 (or later applicable revision) containing an approach sequence, operating tips and approach related messages is intended for cockpit use by the pilot familiar with KLN 94 operations when conducting instrument approaches.

B. SYSTEM ANNUNCIATORS/SWITCHES/CONTROLS

1. HSI/CDI NAV presentation (**NAV/GPS**) switch annunciator - May be used to select data for presentation on the pilot's HSI/CDI; either NAV data from the number one navigation receiver or GPS data from the KLN 94 GPS. Presentation on the HSI/CDI is also required for autopilot coupling.

2. Message (**MSG**) annunciator - Will flash (along with a large "M" on the right side of the KLN 94 screen) to alert the pilot of a situation that requires attention. Press the MSG button on the KLN 94 GPS to view the message. If a message condition exists which requires a specific action by the pilot, the message annunciator will remain on but will not flash. (Appendix B of the KLN 94 Pilot's Guide contains a list of all of the message page messages and their meanings).

3. Waypoint (**WPT**) annunciator - Prior to reaching a waypoint in the active flight plan, the KLN 94 GPS will provide navigation along a curved path segment to ensure a smooth transition between two adjacent legs in the flight plan. This feature is called turn anticipation. Approximately 20 seconds prior to the beginning of turn anticipation the WPT annunciator (along with a large "WPT" on the right side of the KLN 94 screen) will flash, going solid upon initialization of the turn, and extinguishing upon turn completion.

WARNING: Turn anticipation is automatically disabled for FAF waypoints and those used exclusively in PD/STARS where overflight is required. For waypoints shared between PD/STARS and published en route segments (requiring overflight in the PD/STARS), proper selection on the presented waypoint page is necessary to provide adequate route protection on the PD/STARS.

4. HSI/CDI course control knob - Provides analog course input to the KLN 94 in **OBS** when the NAV/GPS switch/annunciator is in **GPS**. When the NAV/GPS switch annunciation is in **NAV**, GPS course selection in **OBS** mode is digital through the use of the controls and display at the KLN 94. The HSI course control knob must also be set to provide proper course datum to the autopilot if coupled to the KLN 94 in LEG or OBS. (The HDG bug provides course datum in CDI installations.)

NOTE: Manual course centering in **OBS** using the control knob can be difficult, especially at long distances. Centering the D-bar can best be accomplished by pressing and then manually setting the course to the value prescribed in the KLN 94 displayed message

5. GPS remote approach (**GPS APR ARM/ACTV**) switch/annunciator - Used to manually select or deselect approach **ARM** (or deselect approach **ACTV**). The remote switch annunciator also annunciates the stage of approach operation; either armed (**ARM**) or activated (**ACTV**). Sequential button pushes if in **ACTV** would first result in approach **ARM** and then approach arm canceled. Subsequent button pushes will cycle between the armed state (if an approach is in the flight plan) and approach arm canceled. Approach **ACTV** cannot be selected manually.

C. PILOT'S DISPLAY

Left/right steering information is presented on the pilot's HSI/CDI as a function of the NAV/GPS switch position.

D. AUTOPILOT COUPLED OPERATION

The KLN 94 may be coupled to the autopilot by first selecting **GPS** on the NAV/GPS switch. Manual selection of the desired track on the pilot's HSI course pointer or DG (via HDG Bug) is required to provide course datum to the autopilot. (Frequent manual course pointer changes may be necessary, such as in the case of flying a DME arc.) The autopilot approach mode (**APR**) should be used when conducting a coupled GPS approach.

NOTE: NAV or APR coupled DME arc intercepts can result in excessive overshoots (aggravated by high ground speeds and/or intercepts from inside the arc).

E. APPROACH MODE SEQUENCING AND RAIM PREDICTION

WARNING: Familiarity with the en route operation of the KLN 94 does not constitute proficiency in approach operations. Do not attempt approach operations in IMC prior to attaining proficiency in the use of the KLN 94.

NOTE: The special use airspace alert will automatically be disabled prior to flying an instrument approach to reduce the potential for message congestion.

1. Prior to arrival, select a STAR if appropriate from the **APT 7** page. Select an approach and an initial approach fix (IAF) from the **APT 8** page. The most efficient means of getting to these pages is initiated by pressing the **PROC** button on the KLN 94.

   a. Press **PROC** button.

   b. Select Approach, Arrival, or Departure.

   c. Select the Airport from the list or enter the desired Airport identifier.

   d. The **APT 7** or **APT 8** page will be displayed as appropriate.

NOTE: To delete or replace a DP, STAR or approach, select **FPL 0** page. Place the cursor over the name of the procedure, press **ENT** to change it, or **CLR** then **ENT** to delete it.

2. En route, check for RAIM availability at the destination airport ETA on the **AUX 3** page.

NOTE: RAIM must be available at the FAF in order to fly an instrument approach. Be prepared to terminate the approach upon loss of RAIM.

3. At or within 30 nm from the airport:

   a. Verify automatic annunciation of APR ARM.

   b. Note automatic d-bar scaling change from ± 5.0 nm to ± 1.0 nm over the next 30 seconds.

   c. Update the KLN 94 altimeter baro setting as required.

   d. Internally the KLN 94 will transition from en route to terminal integrity monitoring.

4. Select **NAV 4** page to fly the approach procedure.

   a. If there is a need to fly a procedure turn or holding pattern, fly in OBS until inbound to the FAF.

NOTE: OBS navigation is TO-FROM (like a VOR) without waypoint sequencing.

   b. If receiving radar vectors, choose **VECTORS** as the IAF, activate vectors when the first vector for the approach is received, and leave the unit in **LEG** mode.

   c. **NoPT** routes including DME arc's are flown in **LEG**. **LEG** is mandatory from the FAF to the MAP.

NOTE: NAV or APR coupled DME arc intercepts can result in excessive overshoots (aggravated by high ground speeds and/or intercepts from inside the arc).

WARNING: Flying final outbound from an off-airport vortac on an overlay approach; beware of the DME distance increasing on final approach, and the GPS distance-to-waypoint decreasing, and not matching the numbers on the approach plate.

5. At or before 2 nm from the FAF inbound:

   a. Select the FAF as the active waypoint, if not accomplished already.

   b. Select LEG operation.

6. Approaching the FAF inbound (within 2 nm.):

   a. Verify APR **ACTV**.

   b. Note automatic dbar scaling change from ± 1.0 nm to ± 0.3 nm over the 2 nm inbound to the FAF.

   c. Internally the KLN 94 will transition from terminal to approach integrity monitoring.

7. Crossing the FAF and APR **ACTV** is not annunciated:

   a. <u>Do not descend</u>.

   b. Execute the missed approach.

8. Missed Approach:

   a. <u>Climb</u>

   b. Navigate to the MAP (in APR ARM if APR **ACTV** is not available).

NOTE: There is no automatic **LEG** sequencing at the MAP.

   c. After climbing in accordance with the published missed approach procedure, press [D→], verify or change the desired holding fix and press **ENT**.

GENERAL NOTES

- The aeronautical data base must be up to date for instrument approach operation.
- Only <u>one</u> approach can be in the flight plan at a time.
- Checking RAIM prediction for your approach while en route using the **AUX 3** page is recommended. A self check occurs automatically within 2nm of the FAF. APR **ACTV** is inhibited without RAIM.
- Data cannot be altered, added to or deleted from the approach procedures contained in the data base. (DME arc intercepts may be relocated along the arc through the **NAV 4** or the **FPL 0** pages).
- <u>**Some approach waypoints do not appear on the approach plates (including in some instances the FAF).**</u>

- Waypoint suffixes in the flight plan:

  i - IAF
  f – FAF
  m – MAP
  h – missed approach holding fix

- The DME arc IAF (arc intercept waypoint) will be a) on your present position radial off the arc VOR when you load the IAF into the flight plan, or b) the beginning of the arc if currently on a radial beyond the arc limit. To adjust the arc intercept to be compatible with a current radar vector, bring up the arc IAF waypoint in the **NAV 4** page scanning field or under the cursor on the **FPL 0** page, press **CLR**, then **ENT**. Fly the arc in LEG. Adjust the HSI or CDI course pointer with reference to the desired track value on the **NAV 4** page (it will flash to remind you). Left/right dbar information is relative to the arc. Displayed distance is not along the arc but direct to the active waypoint. (The **ARC** radial is also displayed in the lower right corner of the **NAV 4** page).

- The DME arc IAF identifier may be unfamiliar. Example: D098G where 098 stands for the 098° radial off the referenced VOR, and G is the seventh letter in the alphabet indicating a 7 DME arc.

- **APR ARM** to **APR ACTV** is automatic provided:

  a. You are in APR **ARM** (normally automatic).
  b. You are in **LEG** mode.
  c. The FAF is the active waypoint.
  d. Within 2 n.m. of the FAF.
  e. Outside of the FAF.
  f. Inbound to the FAF.
  g. RAIM is available.

- Direct-To operation between the FAF and MAP cancels APR ACTV. Fly the missed approach in APR ARM.
- Flagged navigation inside the FAF may automatically bring up the message page stating:

  PRESS PROC BUTTON NOW FOR NAVIGATION

  Pressing the **PROC** button may usually restore navigation (not guaranteed) by changing from **APR ACTV** to **APR ARM**. Fly the missed approach.
- The instrument approach using the KLN 94 may be essentially automatic starting 30 nm out (with a manual baro setting update) or it may require judicious selection of the OBS and LEG modes.

SECTION 5 - PERFORMANCE

No Change.

Cessna
A Textron Company

Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

CESSNA MODEL 172S

AIRPLANES 172S8001 AND ON

SUPPLEMENT 12

CANADIAN SUPPLEMENT

SERIAL NO. ____________________

REGISTRATION NO. ____________________

This supplement must be inserted into Section 9 of the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual when used for Canadian Operation.

FAA APPROVAL
FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J
The Cessna Aircraft Co
Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1
Executive Engineer
Date: [illegible] 1998

Member of GAMA

8 July 1998

172SPHUS-S12-00

SUPPLEMENT 12

CANADIAN SUPPLEMENT

The following Log of Effective Pages provides the date of issue for original and revised pages, as well as a listing of all pages in the Supplement. Pages which are affected by the current revision will carry the date of that revision

Revision Level	Date of Issue
0 (Original)	July 8, 1998

LOG OF EFFECTIVITY PAGES

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
Title (S12-1)	July 8/98	S12-3	July 8/98
S12-2	July 8/98	S12-4	July 8/98

SERVICE BULLETIN CONFIGURATION LIST

The following is a list of Service Bulletins that are applicable to the operation of the airplane, and have been incorporated into this supplement. This list contains only those Service Bulletins that are currently active.

Number	Title	Airplane Unit Effectivity	Revision Incorporation	Incorporated In Airplane

SUPPLEMENT

CANADIAN SUPPLEMENT

SECTION 1
GENERAL

This supplement is required for Canadian operation of Cessna Model 172S.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

The following placard must be installed.

1. Near the fuel tank filler cap:

FUEL 100LL/100 MIN. GRADE AVIATION GASOLINE CAP. 26.5 U.S. GAL. (100 LITRES) USABLE CAP. 17.5 U.S. GAL. (66 LITRES) USABLE TO BOTTOM OF FILLER INDICATOR TAB

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when used for Canadian operation.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

There is no change to basic airplane normal operating procedures when used for Canadian operation.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when used for Canadian operation.

Cessna
A Textron Company

Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

CESSNA MODEL 172S

AIRPLANES 17208113 AND ON

SUPPLEMENT 13

BENDIX/KING KCS-55A SLAVED COMPASS SYSTEM WITH KI-525A HORIZONTAL SITUATION INDICATOR (HSI)

SERIAL NO. ____________________

REGISTRATION NO. ____________________

This supplement must be inserted into Section 9 of the Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual when Horizontal Situation Indicator is installed.

FAA APPROVAL

FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J
The Cessna Aircraft Co
Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1

Executive Engineer

Date: January 22, 1999

Member of GAMA

15 January 1999

172SPHUS-S13-00

SUPPLEMENT 13

BENDIX/KING KCS-55A SLAVED COMPASS SYSTEM WITH KI-525A HORIZONTAL SITUATION INDICATOR (HSI)

The following Log of Effective Pages provides the date of issue for original and revised pages, as well as a listing of all pages in the Supplement. Pages which are affected by the current revision will carry the date of that revision

Revision Level	Date of Issue
0 (Original)	Jan. 15, 1999

LOG OF EFFECTIVITY

PAGE	DATE	PAGE	DATE
Title (S13-1)	Jan. 15/99	S13-5	Jan. 15/99
S13-2	Jan. 15/99	S13-6	Jan. 15/99
S13-3	Jan. 15/99	S13-7	Jan. 15/99
S13-4	Jan. 15/99	S13-8	Jan. 15/99

SERVICE BULLETIN CONFIGURATION LIST

The following is a list of Service Bulletins that are applicable to the operation of the airplane, and have been incorporated into this supplement. This list contains only those Service Bulletins that are currently active.

Number	Title	Airplane Unit Effectivity	Revision Incorporation	Incorporated in Airplane

SUPPLEMENT 13

BENDIX/KING KCS-55A SLAVED COMPASS SYSTEM WITH KI-525A HORIZONTAL SITUATION INDICATOR (HSI)

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The Bendix/King KCS-55A Slaved Compass System with KI-525A HSI Indicator is an additional navigation indicator option. The KCS-55A compass system includes a slaving control and compensator unit, magnetic slaving transmitter and a remote directional gyro. The information obtained from the KCS-55A compass system is displayed on the KI-525A Indicator.

The panel-mounted KI-525A indicator combines the display functions of both the standard Directional Gyro (Heading Indicator) and the Course Deviation Indicator's VOR/LOC/Glideslope information to provide the pilot with a single visual presentation of the complete horizontal navigation situation.

This system also incorporates a slaving accessory and compensator unit. This unit indicates any difference between the displayed heading and the magnetic heading. Right or up deflection indicates a clockwise error of the compass card. Left or down deflection indicates a counterclockwise error of the compass card. Whenever the aircraft is in a turn and the compass card rotates, it is normal for this meter to show a full deflection to one side or the other.

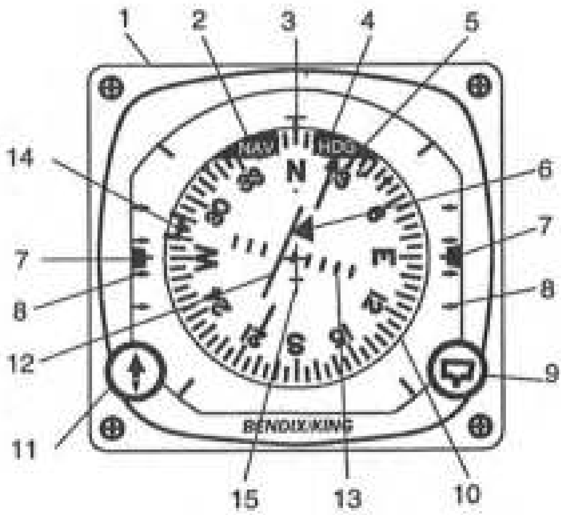


Figure 1. Horizontal Situation Indicator System (Sheet 1 of 2)

1. HORIZONTAL SITUATION INDICATOR (HSI) -- Provides a pictorial presentation of aircraft deviation relative to VOR/GPS radials and localizer beams. It also displays glide slope deviations and gives heading reference with respect to magnetic north. The gyro is remote-mounted and electric-driven

2. NAV FLAG -- Flag is in view when the NAV receiver signal is inadequate.

3. HEADING REFERENCE (LUBBER LINE) -- Magnetic heading appears under this line when the compass card is slaved or slewed to the aircraft's magnetic heading.

4. HEADING WARNING FLAG (HDG) -- When flag is in view, the heading display is invalid.

5. COURSE SELECT POINTER -- Indicates VOR/Localizer or GPS course on the compass card. The selected VOR radial or localizer heading remains set on the compass card when the compass card rotates.

6. TO/FROM INDICATOR -- Indicates direction of VOR station relative to the selected course. Displays TO when a LOC frequency is selected.

7. DUAL GLIDE SLOPE POINTERS -- Displays deviation of airplane from an ILS glideslope. Full scale deflection of the glideslope pointers represents ±0.7 degrees. Pointers will be out of view if an invalid glideslope signal is received.

8. GLIDE SLOPE SCALES -- Indicates displacement from glide slope beam center. A glide slope deviation bar displacement of 2 dots represents full-scale (0.7°) deviation above or below glide slope beam centerline.

9. HEADING SELECTOR KNOB ( )-- Positions the heading bug on compass card by rotating the heading selector knob. The bug rotates with the compass card.

10. COMPASS CARD -- Rotates to display heading of airplane with reference to lubber line on HSI.

11. COURSE SELECTOR KNOB ( )-- Positions the course bearing pointer on the compass card by rotating the course selector knob.

12. COURSE DEVIATION BAR (D-BAR) - The center portion of the omni bearing pointer moves laterally to pictorially indicate the relationship of airplane to the selected course. It indicates degrees of angular displacement from VOR radials and localizer beams, or displacement in nautical miles from GPS desired course.

13. COURSE DEVIATION SCALE - A course deviation bar displacement of 5 dots represents full scale (VOR = ±10°, LOC = ±2-1/2°, GPS = 5nm enroute, GPS APR = .3nm) deviation from beam centerline.

14. HEADING BUG -- Moved by ( ) knob to select desired heading.

15. SYMBOLIC AIRCRAFT -- Provides pictorial presentation of the airplane position and intercept angle relative to selected VOR Radial or localizer course.

Figure 1. Horizontal Situation Indicator System (Sheet 2 of 2)

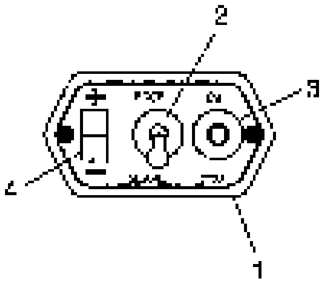


Figure 2. KA-51B Slaving Accessory and Compensator Unit

1. KA-51B SLAVING ACCESSORY AND COMPENSATOR UNIT -- Controls the KCS-55A Compass System.

2. MANUAL/AUTOMATIC (FREE/SLAVE) COMPASS SLAVE SWITCH -- Selects either the manual or automatic slaving mode for the Compass System.

3. CW/CCW COMPASS MANUAL SLAVE SWITCH -- With the manual/automatic compass slave switch in the FREE position, allows manual compass card slaving in either the clockwise or counterclockwise direction. The switch is spring loaded to the center position.

4. SLAVING METER -- Indicates the difference between the displayed heading and the magnetic heading. Up deflection indicates a clockwise error of the compass card. Down deflection indicates a counterclockwise error of the compass card.

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

There is no change to the airplane limitations when the instrument is installed.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

There is no change to the airplane emergency procedures when this instrument is installed.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

CAUTION

ELECTRICAL POWER MUST BE SUPPLIED TO THIS INSTRUMENT FOR PROPER FUNCTIONING. ABSENCE OF WHICH WILL RESULT IN UNRELIABLE HEADING INFORMATION.

Normal procedures for operation of this system differ little from those required for the more conventional Course Deviation Indicators. However, several small differences are worth noting.

The rectilinear movement of the course deviation bar in combination with the rotation of the compass card in response to heading changes, provides an intuitive picture of the navigation situation at a glance when tuned to an omni station. When tuned to a localizer frequency, the course select pointer must be set to the inbound front course for both front and back-course approaches to retain this pictorial presentation.

For normal procedures with autopilots, refer to the Autopilot Supplements in the Supplement section of this handbook. A description of course datum and autopilot procedures for course datum are incorporated in the appropriate autopilot supplements.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when this instrument is installed.

Cessna
A Textron Company

Pilot's Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual

CESSNA MODEL 172S

AIRPLANES 172S8346 AND ON

SUPPLEMENT 15

BENDIX/KING KAP 140 2 AXIS AUTOPILOT

SERIAL NO. ______________________

REGISTRATION NO. ______________________

This supplement must be inserted into Section 9 of the Pilots Operating Handbook and FAA Approved Airplane Flight Manual when the KAP 140 2 Axis Autopilot System is installed.

FAA APPROVAL

FAA APPROVED UNDER FAR 21 SUBPART J
The Cessna Aircraft Co
Delegation Option Manufacturer CE-1

Executive Engineer

Date: 28 December 1999

Member of GAMA

28 December 1999

Revision 4 - 31 October 2002

172SPHUS-S15-04

SUPPLEMENT 15

BENDIX/KING KAP 140
2 AXIS AUTOPILOT

Use the Log of Effective Pages to determine the current status of this supplement. Pages affected by the current revision are indicated by an asterisk (*) preceeding the page number.

Supplement Status	Date
Original Issue	28 December 1999
Revision 1	30 May 2000
Revision 2	30 December 2000
Revision 3	28 June 2002
Revision 4	31 October 2002

LOG OF EFFECTIVE PAGES

	Page	Page Status	Revision Number
*	Title (S15-1)	Revised	4
*	S15-2	Revised	4
	S15-3/S15-4 thru S15-7	Revised	3
*	S15-8 thru S15-11	Revised	4
	S15-12 thru S15-13	Revised	3
	S15-14	Revised	2
	S15-15 thru S15-19	Original Issue	0
	S15-20	Revised	3
	S15-20A thru S15-20B	Added	3
*	S15-21	Revised	4
	S15-22	Original Issue	0
*	S15-23	Revised	
	S15-24 thru S15-26	Original Issue	0
	S15-27 thru S15-31	Revised	3
*	S15-32	Revised	4

APPROVED BY

DATE OF APPROVAL 10-31-02

SUPPLEMENT 15

BENDIX/KING KAP 140
2 AXIS AUTOPILOT

SERVICE BULLETIN CONFIGURATION LIST

The following is a list of Service Bulletins that are applicable to the operation of the airplane, and have been incorporated into this supplement. This list contains only those Service Bulletins that are currently active.

Number	Title	Airplane Serial Effectivity	Revision Incorporation	Incorporated In Airplane
KC-140-M1 (Honeywell Service Bulletin)	KAP 140 AP		Revision 3	

SUPPLEMENT

BENDIX/KING KAP 140
2 AXIS AUTOPILOT

SECTION 1
GENERAL

The KAP 140, 2 Axis Autopilot provides the pilot with the following features: Vertical Speed mode (VS); Altitude hold (ALT); Wing Level (ROL); Heading select (HDG); Approach (APR); ILS coupling to Localizer (LOC) and Glideslope (GS); and Backcourse (REV) modes of operation. The optional KAP 140, 2 Axis Autopilot with Altitude Preselect (if installed) adds Altitude Alerter and Altitude Preselect capabilities.

The KAP 140, 2 Axis Autopilot has an electric trim system which provides autotrim during autopilot operation and manual electric trim (MET) for the pilot when the autopilot is not engaged. The electric trim system is designed to be fail safe for any single inflight trim malfunction. Trim faults are visually and aurally annunciated.

A lockout device prevents autopilot or MET engagement until the system has successfully passed preflight self test. Automatic preflight self-test begins with initial power application to the autopilot.

The following conditions will cause the Autopilot to disengage:

A. Electric Power failure.

B. Internal Autopilot System failure.

C. Pitch accelerations in excess of +1.4g or less than +0.6g only when produced by a failure causing servo runaway. The pilot cannot maneuver the aircraft and trip the monitor.

D. Turn coordinator failure (small square red flag visible on instrument).

E. Computer autopilot monitor that detects either the R (ROLL) or P (PITCH) axis annunciator.

Activation of A/P DISC/TRIM INT control wheel switch will also disconnect the autopilot.

The AVIONICS MASTER switch supplies power to the avionics bus bar of the radio circuit breakers and the autopilot circuit breaker. The AVIONICS MASTER switch also serves as an emergency AP/TRIM shutoff.

The following circuit breakers are used to protect the KAP 140 2-Axis Autopilot:

LABEL	FUNCTIONS
AUTO PILOT	Pull-off circuit breaker supplies power to the KC 140 Computer and the autopilot pitch, roll and pitch trim servos.
WARN	Supplies separate power for autopilot alerting (PITCH TRIM) on the airplane's annunciator panel.

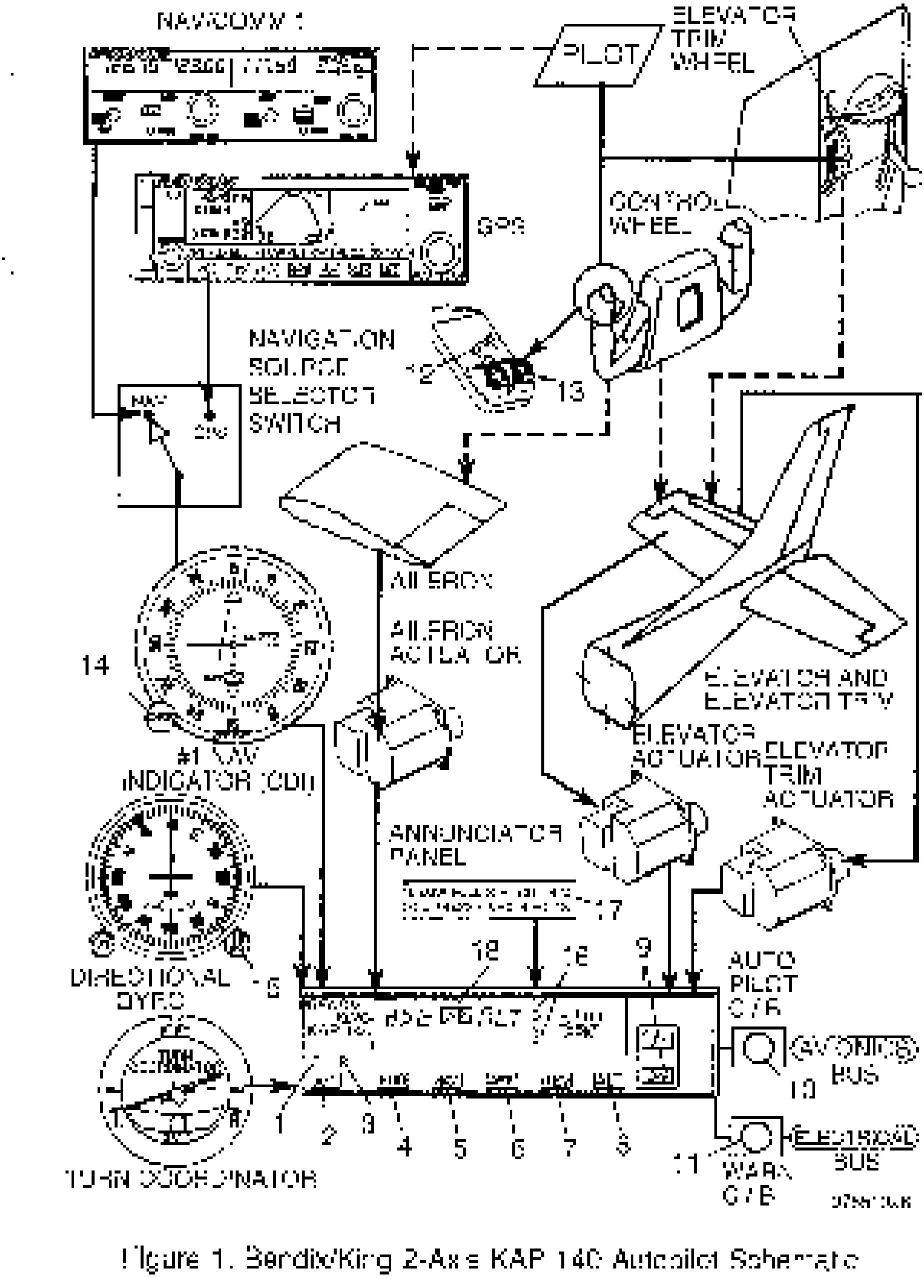
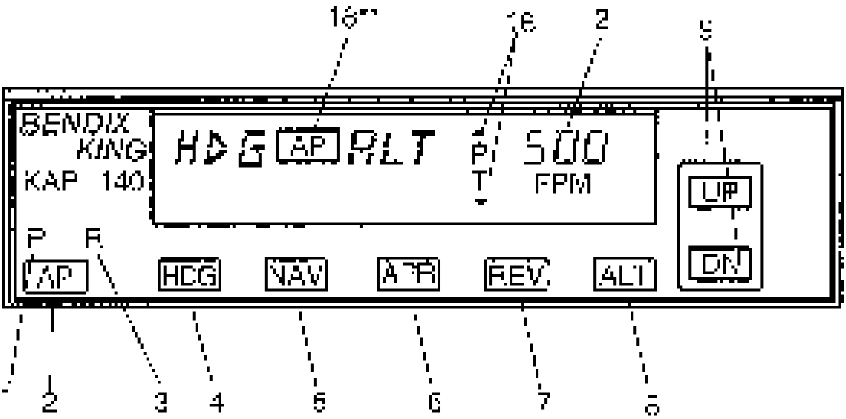


Figure 1. Bendix/King 2-Axis KAP 140 Autopilot Schematic



KAP 140 WITHOUT ALTITUDE PRESELECT

1. PITCH AXIS (P) ANNUNCIATOR -- When illuminated, indicates failure of pitch axis and will either disengage the autopilot or not allow engagement of the pitch axis. In turbulent air will illuminate during abnormal vertical accelerations.
2. AUTOPILOT ENGAGE/DISENGAGE (AP) BUTTON -- When pushed* or pressed and held (approx. 0.25 seconds)**, engages autopilot if all preflight self test conditions are met. The autopilot will engage in the basic roll (ROL) mode which functions as a wing leveler and the pitch axis vertical speed (VS) mode. The commanded vertical speed will be displayed in the upper right corner of autopilot display area. The captured VS will be the vertical speed present at the moment the AP button is pressed. The button may also be used to disengage the autopilot.
3. ROLL AXIS (R) ANNUNCIATOR -- When illuminated, indicates failure of the roll axis and disengages the autopilot.

* Airplane serials 172S8348 thru 172S9128 not incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1.

** Airplane serials 172S8348 thru 172S9128 incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1, and airplane serials 172S9129 and on.

Figure 2. Bendix/King 2-Axis KAP 140 Autopilot, Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 1 of 4)

4. HEADING (HDG) MODE SELECTOR BUTTON -- When pushed, will select the heading mode, which commands the airplane to turn to and maintain the heading selected by the heading bug on the Directional Gyro or HSI (if installed). A new heading may be selected at any time and will result in the airplane turning to the new heading. The button can also be used to toggle between HDG and ROL modes. For airplane serials 172S8348 thru 172S9128 not incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1, this button can also be used to engage the autopilot in HDG mode.

5. NAVIGATION (NAV) MODE SELECTOR BUTTON -- When pushed, will select the Navigation mode. This mode provides automatic beam capture and tracking of VOR, LOC, or GPS signals as selected for presentation on the #1 CDI. NAV mode is recommended for enroute navigation tracking.

6. APPROACH (APR) MODE SELECTOR BUTTON -- When pushed, will select the Approach mode. This mode provides automatic beam capture and tracking of VOR, GPS, LOC and Glideslope (GS) on an ILS, as selected for presentation on #1 CDI. APR mode tracking sensitivity is recommended for instrument approaches.

7. BACK COURSE APPROACH (REV) MODE BUTTON -- This button is active only when the coupled navigation receiver is tuned to a LOC/ILS frequency. When pushed will select the Back Course approach mode. This mode functions identically to the approach mode except that the autopilot response to LOC signals is reversed. Glideslope is locked out with REV mode.

8. ALTITUDE HOLD (ALT) MODE SELECT BUTTON -- When pushed, will select the altitude hold mode. This mode provides capture and tracking of the selected altitude. The selected altitude is the airplane altitude at the moment the ALT button is pressed. If the ALT button is pressed with an established VS rate present, there will be about a 10% (of VS rate) overshoot. The airplane will return positively to the selected altitude. For airplane serials 172S8348 thru 172S9128 not incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1, this button can also be used to engage the autopilot in ALT mode.

Figure 2. Bendix/King 2-Axis KAP 140 Autopilot, Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 2)

9. VERTICAL SPEED (UP/DN) MODE BUTTONS -- The action of these buttons depends on the vertical mode present when pressed. If VS mode is active (AP plus any lateral mode) and the UP button is pressed, the autopilot will modify the displayed VS command (FPM) in the up direction. Single momentary cycles on either the UP or DN button will increment the VS command by 100 FPM per cycle. When either button is continuously held in, it will modify the vertical speed command by 300 fpm per second.

   If ALT mode is active, pressing the UP/DN buttons will modify the captured altitude by 20 feet per cycle, or if held continuously will command the airplane up or down at the rate of 500 FPM, synchronizing the ALT reference to the actual airplane altitude upon button release.

10. AUTOPILOT CIRCUIT BREAKER -- A 5-amp pull-off circuit breaker supplying 28 VDC to the KAP 140 system.

11. WARN C/B -- Power to the autopilot disconnect horn and the airplane's annunciator panel (PITCH TRIM).

12. AUTOPILOT DISCONNECT (A/P DISC/TRIM INT) SWITCH -- When depressed will disengage the autopilot and interrupt manual electric trim (MET) power. An autopilot disconnect will be annunciated by a continuous 2 second tone accompanied by flashing "AP" annunciations on the autopilot computer display.

13. MANUAL ELECTRIC TRIM (MET) SWITCHES -- When both switches are pressed in the same direction, the trim system will provide pitch trim in the selected direction. Use of manual electric trim during autopilot operation will disengage the autopilot.

Figure 2. Bendix/King 2-Axis KAP 140 Autopilot, Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 3)

14. OMNI BEARING SELECT (OBS) KNOB -- Selects the desired course to be tracked by the autopilot. (Note: The HDG bug must also be positioned to the proper course to capture and track the selected radial or desired track).

15. HEADING SELECT KNOB (HDG) -- Positions the heading pointer ("bug") on the compass card. Note that the position of the heading bug also provides course datum to the autopilot when tracking in NAV, APR, or REV (BC) modes. This is in addition to its more intuitive use in the HDG mode.

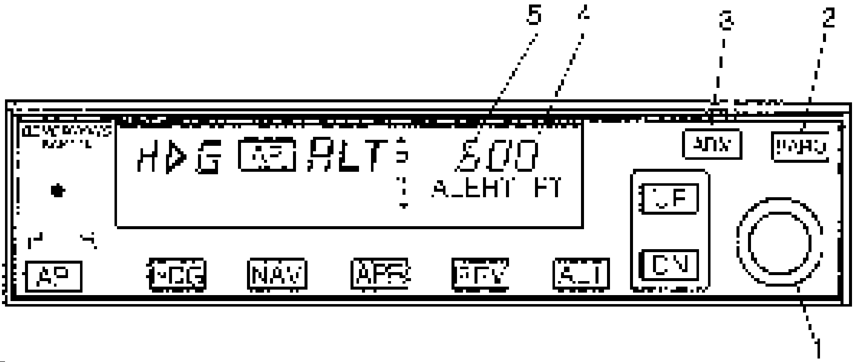
16. PITCH TRIM (PT) Annunciator -- Indicates the direction of required pitch trim. The annunciation will flash if auto trim has not satisfied the request for trim for a period of 10 seconds. A solid $\frac{P}{T}$ without an arrowhead is an indication of a pitch trim fault. Refer to the EMERGENCY PROCEDURES for proper response to a pitch trim fault.

17. PITCH TRIM Annunciation (located on instrument panel or glareshield) -- Illuminates whenever the automated preflight self test detects a pitch trim fault or the continuous monitoring system detects a pitch trim fault in flight. Refer to the EMERGENCY PROCEDURES for proper response to a pitch trim fault.

**18. AUTOPILOT ENGAGE $\boxed{AP}$ Annunciation -- Illuminates whenever the autopilot is engaged. Flashes during pilot initiated or automatic disengagement.

**Airplane serials 172S8348 thru 172S9128 incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1, and airplane serials 172S9129 and on.

Figure 2. Bendix/King 2-Axis KAP 140 Autopilot, Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 4)



KAP 140 WITH ALTITUDE PRESELECT

NOTE

Numbered items apply to the KAP 140 with Altitude Preselect. Other controls and indicators shown are the same as those on the KAP 140 without Altitude Preselect (refer to Figure 2).

1. ROTARY KNOBS -- Used to set the altitude alerter reference altitude; or may be used immediately after pressing the BARO button, to adjust the autopilot baro setting to match that of the airplane's altimeter when manual adjustment is required. (In some systems, the baro setting may be automatically synched to that of the altimeter.)
2. BARO SET (BARO) BUTTON -- When pushed and released, will change the display from the altitude alerter selected altitude to the baro setting display (either IN HG or HPA) for 3 seconds. If pushed and held for 2 seconds, will change the baro setting display from IN HG to HPA or vice versa. Once the baro setting display is visible the rotary knobs may be used to adjust the baro setting.

Figure 3. Bendix/King 2-Axis KAP 140 Autopilot with Altitude Preselect, Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 1 of 2)

3. ALTITUDE ARM (**ARM**) BUTTON -- When pushed, will toggle altitude arming on or off. When ALT ARM is annunciated, the autopilot will capture the altitude alerter displayed altitude (provided the aircraft is climbing or descending in VS to the displayed altitude). ALT hold arming when the autopilot is engaged is automatic upon altitude alerter altitude selection via the rotary knobs. Note that the alerter functions are independent of the arming process thus providing full time alerting, even when the autopilot is disengaged.

4. ALTITUDE ALERTER/VERTICAL SPEED/BARO SETTING DISPLAY -- Normally displays the altitude alerter selected altitude. If the UP or DN button is pushed while in VS hold, the display changes to the command reference for the VS mode in FPM for 3 seconds. If the BARO button is pushed, the display changes to the autopilot baro setting in either IN HG or HPA for 3 seconds.

NOTE

This display may be dashed for up to 3 minutes on start up if a blind encoder is installed which requires a warm-up period.

5. ALTITUDE ALERT (**ALERT**) ANNUNCIATION -- Illuminates continuously in the region of from 200 to 1000 feet from the selected altitude if the airplane was previously outside of this region. Flashes (1) for two seconds the first time the airplane crossed the selected altitude and (2) continuously in the 200 to 1000 feet region if the airplane was previously inside of this region (i.e. at the selected altitude). Associated with the visual alerting is an aural alert (5 short tones) which occurs 1000 feet from the selected altitude upon approaching the altitude and 200 feet from the selected altitude on leaving the altitude.

Figure 3. Bendix/King 2-Axis KAP 140 Autopilot with Altitude Preselect, Operating Controls and Indicators (Sheet 2)

SECTION 2
LIMITATIONS

The following autopilot limitations must be adhered to:

1. The entire preflight test procedure outlined under Section 4, paragraph A of this supplement, including steps 1 through 7, must be successfully completed prior to each flight. Use of the autopilot or manual electric trim system is prohibited prior to completion of these tests.
2. During autopilot operation, a pilot with seat belt fastened must be seated at the left pilot position.
3. The autopilot must be OFF during takeoff and landing.
4. KMA 28 audio amplifier PUSH OFF/EMG operation is prohibited during normal operations.

NOTE

During emergency operation of the audio amplifier, the PUSH OFF/EMG state of the KMA 28 will prevent flight control system alerts from being heard.

5. The system is approved for Category I operation only (Approach mode selected).
6. Autopilot maximum airspeed limitation -- 140 KIAS.
   Autopilot minimum airspeed limitation -- 70 KIAS.
   Autopilot minimum approach speed -- 80 KIAS.
7. Maximum flap extension -- 10°.
8. The autopilot must be disengaged below 200 feet AGL during approach operations and below 800 feet AGL for all other phases of flight.
9. Overriding the autopilot to change pitch or roll attitude is prohibited. (Disengage with A/P DISC/TRIM INT or AP select button.)
10. The AUTO PILOT circuit breaker must be pulled following any inflight illumination of the red "PITCH TRIM" warning light, but only after first completing the Emergency Procedures (Section 3, paragraph 1.). The manual electric trim and autopilot autotrim systems will be disabled with the AUTO PILOT circuit breaker pulled.

SECTION 3
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

The four step procedure listed under paragraph A should be among the basic airplane emergency procedures that are committed to memory. It is important that the pilot be proficient in accomplishing all four steps without reference to this manual.

1. In case of Autopilot, Autopilot Trim, or Manual Electric Trim malfunction (accomplish Items A and B simultaneously):
   - A. Airplane Control Wheel -- **GRASP FIRMLY** and regain aircraft control.
   - B. **A/P DISC/TRIM INT** Switch -- **PRESS** and **HOLD** throughout recovery.
   - C. AIRCRAFT -- **RE-TRIM** Manually as Needed.
   - D. **AUTO PILOT** Circuit Breaker -- PULL.

NOTE

The **AVIONICS MASTER** Switch may be used as an alternate means of removing all electric power from the autopilot and electric trim systems. If necessary perform steps 1A through 1C above, then turn the **AVIONICS MASTER** Switch OFF before locating and pulling the **AUTO PILOT** Circuit Breaker. Turn the **AVIONICS MASTER** Switch on as soon as possible to restore power to all other avionics equipment. Primary attitude, airspeed, directional compass, and altitude instruments will remain operational at all times.

WARNING

DO NOT ATTEMPT TO RE-ENGAGE THE AUTOPILOT FOLLOWING AN AUTOPILOT, AUTOTRIM, OR MANUAL ELECTRIC TRIM MALFUNCTION UNTIL THE CAUSE FOR THE MALFUNCTION HAS BEEN CORRECTED.

Maximum Altitude losses due to autopilot malfunction:

CONFIGURATION	ALT. LOSS
Cruise, Climb, Descent	350 ft.
Maneuvering	100 ft.
Approach	90 ft.

AMPLIFIED EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

The following paragraphs are presented to supply additional information for the purpose of providing the pilot with a more complete understanding of the recommended course of action for an emergency situation.

1. An autopilot or autotrim malfunction occurs when there is an uncommanded deviation in the airplane flight path or when there is abnormal control wheel or trim wheel motion. In some cases, and especially for autopilot trim, there may be little to no airplane motion, yet the red **PITCH TRIM** annunciator (ship's annunciator panel) may illuminate and an alert tone may sound.

   The primary concern in reacting to an autopilot or autopilot trim malfunction, or to an automatic disconnect of the autopilot, is in maintaining control of the airplane. Immediately grasp the control wheel and press and hold down the A/P DISC/TRIM INT switch throughout the recovery. Manipulate the controls as required to safely maintain operation of the airplane within all of its operating limitations. Elevator trim should be used manually as needed to relieve control forces. **Locate and pull the AUTO PILOT circuit breaker** on the right hand circuit breaker panel to completely disable the autopilot system.

2. A manual electric trim malfunction may be recognized by illumination of the red **PITCH TRIM** annunciator, accompanied by an alert tone, or by unusual trim wheel motions with the autopilot OFF, without pilot actuation of the manual electric trim switches. As with an autopilot malfunction, the first concern following a manual electric trim malfunction is maintaining control of the airplane. Grasp the control wheel firmly and press and hold down the A/P DISC/TRIM INT switch. Locate and pull the AUTO PILOT circuit breaker on the right hand breaker panel.

3. Note that the emergency procedure for any malfunction is essentially the same: immediately grasp the control wheel and regain airplane control while pressing and holding the A/P DISC/TRIM INT switch down, and retrim the airplane as needed. After these steps have been accomplished secure the autopilot electric trim system by pulling the autopilot (AUTO PILOT) circuit breaker. As with any other airplane emergency procedure, it is important that the 4 steps of the emergency procedure located on Page 15 be committed to memory.

4. The AVIONICS MASTER switch may be used to remove all electric power from the Autopilot and Electric Trim systems while the circuit breaker is located and pulled. Return the AVIONICS MASTER switch to the ON position as soon as possible. With the AVIONICS MASTER switch off, all avionics and autopilot equipment will be inoperable.

5. It is important that all portions of the autopilot and electric trim system are preflight tested prior to each flight in accordance with the procedures published herein in order to assure their integrity and continued safe operation during flight.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT RESET AUTOPILOT CIRCUIT BREAKER FOLLOWING AN AUTOPILOT/AUTOTRIM OR MANUAL ELECTRIC TRIM MALFUNCTION UNTIL THE CAUSE FOR THE MALFUNCTION HAS BEEN CORRECTED.

A flashing $\overset{P}{T}$ auto trim annunciation on the face of the autopilot indicates a failure of the auto trim function to relieve pitch servo loading in a timely manner. This condition should be temporary.

1. FLASHING $\overset{P}{T}$ ANNUNCIATION -- **OBSERVE** aircraft pitch behavior. If pitch behavior is satisfactory, wait 5-10 seconds for the annunciation to stop.

2. If annunciation continues, Airplane Control Wheel -- **GRASP FIRMLY**, disengage the autopilot and check for an out of pitch trim condition. Manually retrim as required.

3. **AUTOPILOT OPERATION -- CONTINUE** if satisfied that the out of trim indication was temporary. **DISCONTINUE** if evidence indicates a failure of the auto trim function.

A red **P** or R on the face of the autopilot computer.

1. A red P is an indication that the pitch axis of the autopilot has been disabled and cannot be engaged. **DO NOT ENGAGE INTO A ROLL AXIS ONLY SYSTEM.**

NOTE

If the red **P** lamp was the result of some abnormal accelerations on the airplane, the annunciation should be extinguished within approximately one minute and normal use of the autopilot will be reestablished.

2. A red R is an indication that the roll axis of the autopilot has been disabled and cannot be engaged. The autopilot cannot be reengaged.

Flashing mode annunciation on the display of the autopilot computer.

1. Flashing **HDG** -- Indicates a failed heading. **PRESS** HDG button to terminate flashing. ROL will be displayed.

2. Flashing **NAV**, **APR** or **REV** -- Usually an indication of a flagged navigation source. PRESS the **NAV**, **APR** or **REV** button to terminate flashing. ROL will be displayed. (Select a valid navigation source.)

NOTE

A flashing NAV, APR or REV annunciation can also be caused by a failed heading valid input.

3. Flashing **GS** -- Indication of a flagged glideslope. (GS will rearm automatically if a valid GS signal is received.)

NOTE

To continue tracking the localizer, observe the appropriate minimums for a nonprecision approach. (Press ALT twice in rapid succession to terminate the flashing. Control the pitch axis in the default VS mode.)

NOTE

At the onset of mode annunciator flashing, the autopilot has already reverted to a default mode of operation, i.e., ROL and/or VS mode. An immediate attempt to reengage to lost mode may be made if the offending navigation, glideslope or compass flag has cleared.

EXCEPTION

The HDG annunciation will flash for 5 seconds upon selection of NAV, APR, or REV modes to remind the pilot to set the HDG bug for use as course datum.

Effects of instrument losses upon autopilot operation:

1. Loss of the artificial horizon -- no effect on the autopilot.

2. Loss of the turn coordinator -- autopilot inoperative.

3. Loss of the Directional Gyro (DG) -- The directional gyro does not provide any system valid flag. If the DG fails to function properly the autopilot heading and navigation mode will not function correctly. Under these conditions, the only usable lateral mode is ROL.

4. Loss of Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI) (if installed) -- If the HSI fails to function properly the autopilot heading and navigation mode will not function correctly. Under these conditions, the only usable lateral mode is ROL.

5. Loss of Blind Altitude Encoder -- Altitude Alerter and Altitude Preselect function inoperative.

NOTE

The following procedures apply to airplane serials 172S8348 thru 172S9128 incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140 M1, and serials 172S9129 and on.

The following voice messages will be annunciated as conditions warrant:

1. "**TRIM IN MOTION**" - Elevator trim running for more than 5 seconds, message repeats every 5 seconds.
2. "**CHECK PITCH TRIM**" - An out of trim condition has existed for approximately 20 seconds, take immediate corrective action
   a. Airplane Control Wheel -- GRASP FIRMLY and regain aircraft control.
   b. **A/P DISC/TRIM INT** Switch -- PRESS and HOLD throughout recovery.
   c. AIRCRAFT -- **RE-TRIM** Manually as Needed.
   d. **AUTO PILOT** Circuit Breaker -- PULL.

SECTION 4
NORMAL PROCEDURES

A. **PREFLIGHT** (PERFORM PRIOR TO EACH FLIGHT):

1. **AVIONICS MASTER** -- ON.
2. **POWER APPLICATION AND SELF TEST** -- A self test is performed upon power application to the computer. This test is a sequence of internal checks that validate proper system operation prior to allowing normal system operation. The sequence is indicated by "PFT" with an increasing number for the sequence steps. Successful completion of self test is identified by all display segments being illuminated (Display Test), external "Pitch Trim" (A/C System Annunciator Panel) being illuminated, and the disconnect tone sounding.

NOTE

Upon applying power to the autopilot, the red P warning on the face of the autopilot may illuminate indicating that the pitch axis cannot be engaged. This condition should be temporary, lasting approximately 30 seconds. The P will extinguish and normal operation will be available.

WARNING

IF PITCH TRIM LIGHT STAYS ON, THEN THE AUTOTRIM DID NOT PASS PREFLIGHT TEST. THE AUTOPILOT CIRCUIT BREAKER MUST BE PULLED. MANUAL ELECTRIC TRIM AND AUTOPILOT ARE INOPERATIVE.

3. **MANUAL ELECTRIC TRIM -- TEST** as follows:

   a. LH SWITCH -- PUSH FORWARD to DN position and hold. OBSERVE NO MOVEMENT of Elevator Trim Wheel. Release switch to Center OFF Position.

NOTE

If movement of the elevator trim wheel is observed during a check of either LH or RH Switch, the manual electric trim system has malfunctioned. The flight may be continued if the AUTOPILOT Circuit Breaker is pulled to the OFF position and secured until repairs can be made.

   b. LH SWITCH -- PULL AFT to UP position and hold. OBSERVE NO MOVEMENT of the Elevator Trim Wheel. Release switch to center OFF position.

   c. RH SWITCH -- PUSH FORWARD to DN position and hold for 5 seconds. OBSERVE NO MOVEMENT of Elevator Trim Wheel. Verify red "P RT" light above AP button. Release switch to center OFF position.

(Continued Next Page)

NOTE

If red "P R" light is not observed after holding RH switch for 5 seconds, the trim monitor system has failed. The flight may be continued if the AUTOPILOT Circuit Breaker is pulled to the OFF position until repairs can be made.

d. RH SWITCH -- PULL AFT to UP position and hold for 5 seconds. OBSERVE NO MOVEMENT of Elevator Trim Wheel. Verify red "P R" light above AP button. Release switch to center OFF position.

e. LH and RH Switch -- PUSH FORWARD SIMULTANEOUSLY and HOLD. OBSERVE MOVEMENT of Elevator Trim Wheel in proper direction (nose down). While holding LH and RH Switches forward, PRESS and HOLD A/P DISC/TRIM INT Switch. OBSERVE NO MOVEMENT of Elevator Trim Wheel. Continue to hold LH and RH Switches forward and RELEASE A/P DISC/TRIM INT Switch. OBSERVE MOVEMENT of Elevator Trim Wheel in proper direction. Release LH and RH Switches to center OFF position.

NOTE

During Steps e. and f., verify movement of elevator trim tab in proper direction (the elevator trim tab will move up for nose down trim). If movement of Elevator Trim Wheel is observed while the A/P DISC/TRIM INT Switch is pressed, the manual electric trim system has failed. The flight may be continued if the AUTOPILOT Circuit Breaker is pulled to the OFF position until repairs can be made.

f. LH and RH Switch -- PULL AFT SIMULTANEOUSLY and HOLD. OBSERVE MOVEMENT of Elevator Trim Wheel in proper direction (nose up). While holding LH and RH Switches aft, PRESS and HOLD A/P DISC/TRIM INT Switch. OBSERVE NO MOVEMENT of Elevator Trim Wheel. Continue to hold LH and RH Switches aft and RELEASE A/P DISC/TRIM INT Switch. OBSERVE MOVEMENT of Elevator Trim Wheel in proper direction. Release LH and RH Switches to center OFF position.

4. **FLASHING BARO SETTING** (if installed) -- **SET** proper baro setting manually (or press BARO to accept the present value).
5. **AUTOPILOT -- ENGAGE** by pressing* or pressing and holding** AP button.
6. FLIGHT **CONTROLS -- MOVE** fore, aft, left and right to verify the autopilot can be overpowered.
7. **A/P DISC/TRIM INT** Switch -- **PRESS**. Verify that the autopilot disconnects.
8. **TRIM -- SET** to take off position manually.

WARNING

THE PILOT IN COMMAND MUST CONTINUOUSLY MONITOR THE AUTOPILOT WHEN IT IS ENGAGED, AND BE PREPARED TO DISCONNECT THE AUTOPILOT AND TAKE IMMEDIATE CORRECTIVE ACTION – INCLUDING MANUAL CONTROL OF THE AIRPLANE AND/OR PERFORMANCE OF EMERGENCY PROCEDURES -- IF AUTOPILOT OPERATION IS NOT AS EXPECTED OR IF AIRPLANE CONTROL IS NOT MAINTAINED.

WARNING

DURING ALL AUTOPILOT COUPLED OPERATIONS, THE PILOT IN COMMAND MUST USE PROPER AUTOPILOT COMMANDS AND USE THE PROPER ENGINE POWER TO ENSURE THAT THE AIRPLANE IS MAINTAINED BETWEEN 70 AND 140 KIAS, AND DOES NOT EXCEED OTHER BASIC AIRPLANE OPERATING LIMITATIONS.

* Airplane serials 172S8848 thru 172S9128 not incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1.

** Airplane serials 172S8848 thru 172S9128 incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1, and airplane serials 172S9129 and on.

NOTE

Autopilot tracking performance will be degraded in turbulence.

1. BEFORE TAKEOFF:

   a. **A/P DISC/TRIM INT** Switch -- **PRESS.**

   b. **BARO** setting (if installed) -- **CHECK.**

⚠ CAUTION

CONTINUE TO SET MANUALLY THROUGHOUT THE FLIGHT EACH TIME THE ALTIMETER BARO SETTING REQUIRES ADJUSTMENT. NO FURTHER REMINDERS (FLASHING) WILL BE GIVEN.

   c. **ALTITUDE SELECT** KNOB (if installed) -- **ROTATE** until the desired altitude is displayed.

NOTE

An altitude alert is annunciated 1000 ft. prior to arrival at the selected altitude. Aircraft deviations greater than 200 feet above or below the selected altitude will produce an altitude alert. The alert annunciation is accompanied by a series of short tones.

2. AFTER TAKEOFF:

   a. Elevator Trim -- **VERIFY** or **SET** to place the airplane in a trimmed condition prior to Autopilot engagement.

NOTE

Engaging the autopilot into a mistrim condition may cause unwanted altitude changes and a "TRIM FAIL" annunciation.

   b. Airspeed and Rate of Climb -- **STABILIZED.**

NOTE

Avoid autopilot engagement into a climb condition that either cannot be maintained, or is on the performance limits of the airplane for its power and weight configuration.

c. **AP** Button - **PRESS***, or **PRESS** and **HOLD****. Note **ROL** and **VS** annunciator on. If no other modes are selected the autopilot will operate in the ROL and VS modes.

WARNING

WHEN OPERATING AT OR NEAR THE BEST RATE OF CLIMB AIRSPEED, AT CLIMB POWER SETTINGS, AND USING VERTICAL SPEED (VS) MODE, CONTINUED OPERATION IN VERTICAL SPEED MODE CAN RESULT IN AN AIRPLANE STALL. IF NECESSARY, DISCONNECT THE AUTO PILOT AND RETURN THE AIRPLANE TO A STABILIZED CLIMB PRIOR TO RE-ENGAGMENT.

WARNING

WHEN OPERATING AT OR NEAR THE MAXIMUM AUTOPILOT SPEED, IT WILL BE NECESSARY TO REDUCE POWER IN ORDER TO MAINTAIN THE DESIRED RATE OF DESCENT AND NOT EXCEED THE MAXIMUM AUTOPILOT SPEED.

WARNING

DO NOT HELP THE AUTOPILOT OR HAND-FLY THE AIRPLANE WITH THE AUTOPILOT ENGAGED AS THE AUTOPILOT WILL RUN THE PITCH TRIM TO OPPOSE CONTROL WHEEL MOVEMENT. A MISTRIM OF THE AIRPLANE, WITH ACCOMPANYING LARGE ELEVATOR CONTROL FORCES, MAY RESULT IF THE PILOT MANIPULATES THE CONTROL WHEEL MANUALLY WHILE THE AUTOPILOT IS ENGAGED.

* Airplane serials 172S8348 thru 172S9128 not incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1.

** Airplane serials 172S8348 thru 172S9128 incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1, and airplane serials 172S9129 and on.

3. CLIMB OR DESCENT:

   a. **BARO** setting (if installed) -- **CHECK**.

   b. Using Vertical Trim:

      1) **VERTICAL SPEED** Control -- **PRESS** either the **UP** or **DN** button to select aircraft vertical speed within the +1500/-2000 ft. per min command limits.

      2) **VERTICAL SPEED** Control -- **RELEASE** when desired vertical speed is displayed. The autopilot will maintain the selected vertical speed.

NOTE

Avoid selecting a climb rate that either cannot be maintained or is on the performance limit of the airplane for its power and weight configuration.

4. ALTITUDE HOLD:

   a. Capture preselected altitudes (if installed).

      1) **ALTITUDE SELECT** knob -- **ROTATE** until the desired altitude is displayed. Note **ARM** annunciation occurs automatically with altitude selection when the autopilot is engaged.

      2) ALTITUDE SELECT MODE (**ARM**) button -- **PUSH** to alternately disarm or arm altitude capture.

      3) Airplane -- **ESTABLISH** vertical speed necessary to intercept the selected altitude.

NOTE

It may be possible to observe minor difference between the autopilots' selected altitude and the aircraft altimeter after an altitude capture. These discrepancies are attributed to the autopilot and altimeter using different static sources combined with autopilot system tolerances. Not inputting the proper barometric setting into the autopilot computer will produce inaccuracies.

NOTE

Altitude preselect captures are not recommended on nonprecision approaches to capture the MDA. Glideslope coupling will preclude a preselect altitude capture on an ILS.

b. Altitude (**ALT**) Hold Button:

1) **ALT** Hold Selector Button -- **PRESS.** Note **ALT** hold annunciator **ON.** Autopilot will maintain the selected altitude.

NOTE

It is recommended by the FAA (AC00-24B) to use basic "PITCH ATTITUDE HOLD" mode during operation in severe turbulence. However, since this autopilot does **not** use the attitude gyro as a pitch reference, it is recommended that the autopilot be disconnected and that the airplane be flown by hand in severe turbulence.

c. Changing altitudes:

1) Using Vertical Speed (Recommended for altitude changes less than 100 ft.)

a) **VERTICAL SPEED** Control -- **PRESS** and **HOLD** either the **UP** or **DN** button. Vertical Speed will seek a rate of change of about 500 fpm.

b) **VERTICAL SPEED** Control -- **RELEASE** when desired altitude is reached. The autopilot will maintain the desired altitude.

NOTE

As an alternative, a series of quick momentary presses on the **UP** or **DN** button will program either an increase or decrease of the altitude reference, 20 feet each time the button is pressed.

5. HEADING HOLD.

   a. Heading Selector Knob -- **SET BUG** to desired heading.

   b. **HDG** Mode Selector Button -- **PRESS**. Note **HDG** mode annunciator ON. Autopilot will automatically turn the aircraft to the selected heading.

NOTE

Aircraft heading may change in HOL mode due to turbulence.

   c. Heading Selector Knob -- **MOVE BUG** to the desired heading. Autopilot will automatically turn the aircraft to the new selected heading.

6. NAV COUPLING:

   a. When equipped with DG:

      1) **OBS** Knob -- **SELECT** desired course.

      2) **NAV** Mode Selector Button -- **PRESS**. Note **NAV** ARM annunciated.

      3) Heading Selector Knob -- **ROTATE BUG** to agree with **OBS** course.

NOTE

When NAV is selected, the autopilot will flash HDG for 5 seconds to remind the pilot to reset the HDG bug to the OBS course. If HDG mode was in use at the time of NAV button selection, a 45° intercept angle will then be automatically established based on the position of the bug.

NOTE

All angle intercepts compatible with radar vectors may be accomplished by selecting ROL mode PRIOR to pressing the NAV button. The HDG bug must still be positioned to agree with the OBS course to provide course datum to the autopilot when using a DG (Directional Gyro).

a) If the CDI needle is greater than 2 to 3 dots from center, the autopilot will annunciate **NAVARM**. When the computed capture point is reached the **ARM** annunciator will go out and the selected course will be automatically captured and tracked.

b) If the CDI needle is less than 2 to 3 dots from center, the HDG mode will disengage upon selecting NAV mode. The **NAV** annunciator will then illuminate and the capture/track sequence will automatically begin.

b. When equipped with HSI:

1) Course Bearing Pointer - SET to desired course.

2) Heading Selector Knob -- **SET BUG** to provide desired intercept angle and engage HDG mode.

3) **NAV** Mode Selector Button -- **PRESS**.

a) If the Course Deviation Bar (D-Bar) is greater than 2 to 3 dots from center, the autopilot will annunciate **NAVARM**. When the computed capture point is reached the **ARM** annunciator will go out and the selected course will be automatically captured and tracked.

b) If the D-Bar is less than 2 to 3 dots from center, the HDG mode will disengage upon selecting NAV mode. The **NAV** annunciator will then illuminate and the capture/track sequence will automatically begin.

7. APPROACH (APR) COUPLING: (To enable glideslope coupling on an ILS and more precise tracking on instrument approaches)

   a. When equipped with DG:

      1) **BARO** setting -- **CHECK** (if installed).

      2) **OBS** Knob -- **SELECT** desired approach course. (For a localizer, set it to serve as a memory aid.)

      3) **APR** Mode Selector Button -- **PRESS.** Note APR_{ARM} annunciated.

      4) Heading Selector Knob -- **ROTATE BUG** to agree with desired approach.

NOTE

When APR is selected, the autopilot will flash HDG for 5 seconds to remind the pilot to reset the HDG bug to the approach course. If HDG mode was in use at the time of APR button selection, a 45° intercept angle will then be automatically established based on the position of the bug.

NOTE

All angle intercepts compatible with radar vectors may be accomplished by selecting ROL mode PRIOR to pressing the APR button. The HDG bug must still be positioned to agree with the desired approach course to provide course datum to the autopilot when using a DG.

         a) If the CDI needle is greater than 2 to 3 dots from the center, the autopilot will annunciate **APRARM**; when the computed capture point is reached the **ARM** annunciator will go out and the selected course will be automatically captured and tracked.

         b) If the CDI needle is less than 2 to 3 dots form the center, the HDG mode will disengage upon selecting APR mode; the **APR** annunciator will illuminate and the capture/track sequence will automatically begin.

b. When equipped with HSI:

1) **BARO** Setting (if installed) -- **CHECK.**

2) Course Bearing Pointer -- **SET** to desired course.

3) Heading Selector Knob -- **SET BUG** to provide desired intercept angle.

4) **APR** Mode Selector Button -- **PRESS.**

a) If the D-Bar is greater than 2 to 3 dots from center, the autopilot will annunciate **APRARM**; when the computed capture point is reached the **ARM** annunciator will go out and the selected course will be automatically captured and tracked.

b) If the D-Bar is less than 2 to 3 dots from center, the HDG mode will disengage upon selecting APR mode; the **APR** annunciator will illuminate and the capture/track sequence will automatically begin.

5) Airspeed -- **MAINTAIN** 90 KIAS minimum during coupled autopilot approaches (recommended).

8. BACK COURSE (REV) APPROACH COUPLING (i.e., reverse localizer):

a. When equipped with DG:

1) **BARO** setting (if installed) -- **CHECK.**

2) **OBS** Knob -- **SELECT** the localizer course to the front course inbound (as a memory aid).

3) **REV** Mode Selector Button -- **PRESS.**

4) Heading Selector Knob -- **ROTATE BUG** to the heading corresponding to the localizer front course inbound.

NOTE

When REV is selected, the autopilot will flash HDG for 5 seconds to remind the pilot to reset the HDG bug to the localizer FRONT COURSE INBOUND heading. If heading mode was in use at the time of REV button selection, a 45° intercept angle will then be automatically established based on the position of the bug.

NOTE

All angle intercepts compatible with radar vectors may be accomplished by selecting ROL mode PRIOR to pressing the REV button. The HDG bug must still be positioned to the localizer FRONT COURSE INBOUND heading to provide course datum to the autopilot when using a DG.

a) If the CDI needle is greater than 2 to 3 dots from center, the autopilot will annunciate **REV**ARM; when the computed capture point is reached the **ARM** annunciator will go out and the selected back course will be automatically captured and tracked.

b) If the CDI needle is less than 2 to 3 dots from center, the HDG mode will disengage upon selecting **REV** mode; the **REV** annunciator will illuminate and the capture/track sequence will automatically begin.

b. When equipped with HSI:

1) **BARO** Setting (if installed) -- **CHECK.**

2) Course Bearing pointer -- **SET** to the ILS front course inbound heading.

3) Heading Selector Knob -- **SET BUG** to provide desired intercept angle and engage HDG mode.

4) **REV** Mode Selector Button -- **PRESS.**

a) If the D-Bar is greater than 2 to 3 dots from center, the autopilot will annunciate REV_{ARM}; when the computed capture point is reached the **ARM** annunciator will go out and the selected back course will be automatically captured and tracked.

b) If the D-Bar is less than 2 to 3 dots from center, the HDG mode will disengage upon selecting **REV** mode; the **REV** annunciator will illuminate and the capture/track sequence will automatically begin.

5) Airspeed -- **MAINTAIN** 90 KIAS minimum during autopilot coupled approaches (recommended).

9. GLIDESLOPE COUPLING

a. **APR** Mode -- **ENGAGED**. Note **GS**$_{\mathbf{ARM}}$ annunciated.

NOTE

Glideslope coupling is inhibited when operating in NAV or REV modes. With NAV 1 selected to a valid ILS, glideslope armed and coupling occurs automatically in the APR mode when tracking a localizer.

b. At Glideslope centering -- note **ARM** annunciator goes out.

NOTE

Autopilot can capture glideslope from above or below the beam.

c. Airspeed -- **MAINTAIN** 90 KIAS minimum during autopilot coupled approaches (recommended).

10. MISSED APPROACH

a. **A/P DISC/TRIM INTER** Switch - **PRESS** to disengage **AP**.

b. **MISSED APPROACH - EXECUTE.**

c. If autopilot is desired:

1) Elevator Trim -- **VERIFY** or **SET.**

2) Airspeed and Rate of Climb -- **STABILIZED.**

NOTE

Avoid autopilot engagement into a climb condition that either cannot be maintained, or is on the performance limits of the airplane for its power and weight configuration.

3) AP Button -- **PRESS.** Note **ROL** and **VS** annunciators on. If no other modes are selected the autopilot will operate in the ROL and VS modes. Verify that the aircraft Vertical Speed Indicator (VSI) and the Autopilot VS agree.

NOTE

If tracking the ILS course outbound as part of the missed approach procedure is desired, use the NAV mode to prevent inadvertent GS coupling.

11. BEFORE LANDING

a. **A/P DISC/TRIM INT** Switch - **PRESS*** or **PRESS** and **HOLD**** to disengage AP.

SECTION 5
PERFORMANCE

There is no change to the airplane performance when the KAP 140, 2 Axis Autopilot is installed.

* Airplane serials 172S8346 thru 172S9128 not incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1.

** Airplane serials 172S8346 thru 172S9128 incorporating Honeywell Service Bulletin KC140-M1, and airplane serials 172S9129 and on